# The Beginning 01-01

This is how **the beginning** of everything happened. **God created** the **universe** and everything in it in six days. After God created the earth it was **dark** and **empty**, and **nothing had been formed** in it. But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.

## Translation Notes:

* **the beginning** - That is, “the beginning of all things,” before anything existed except God.
* **created** - This is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.
* **universe** - This includes everything that God created on the earth and in the heavens, both visible and invisible things.
* **dark** - It was completely dark. There was no light at all, since God had not yet created light.
* **empty** - God had not yet created anything except for the bare earth covered by water.
* **nothing had been formed** - There were no distinguishing features–just water covering everything.
* **God’s Spirit** - The Spirit of God, sometimes called the Holy Spirit, was present in the beginning, moving freely over the earth in order to create all that he had planned to do.

# God Created Light 01-02

Then **God said**, “**Let there be** light!” And there was **light**. God saw that the light **was good** and called it “day.” He separated it from the darkness, which he called “night.” God created the light on the first day of **creation**.

## Translation Notes:

* **God said** - God created light by means of a simple verbal command.
* **let there be** - This is a command that happened immediately because it was spoken by God. It may be more natural to translate this as a statement of certainty that this would definitely happen. For example, you could translate this as, “God said, ‘There will be light.’”
* **light** - This was a special light that God created–the sun was not created until later.
* **was good** - This phrase is often repeated through the Creation story, and emphasizes that each stage of creation was pleasing to God and accomplished his plan and purpose.
* **creation** - This word is used here to refer to the six-day period during which God made everything that exists.

# God Created Sky 01-03

On **the second day** of creation, **God spoke** and **created** the **sky** above the earth. He made the sky by separating the water above from the water below.

## Translation Notes:

* **the second day** - God’s work of creation was orderly, purposeful, and sequential. The things he created each day built upon and depended on the acts of the previous days.
* **God spoke** - God created the sky by speaking a command. - **created** - God made the sky out of nothing. - **sky** - This term refers to all of the space above the earth, including the air we breathe and the heavens.

# God Created the Land 01-04

On the **third day**, **God spoke** and separated the water from the dry land. He called the dry land “**earth**,” and he called the water “seas.” God saw that what he had **created** was **good**.

## Translation Notes:

* **third day** - The next in the series of orderly days in which God prepared the earth for life.
* **God spoke** - God created the dry land by speaking a command.
* **earth** - This word is used here to refer to dirt or soil, which is what dry land is made of. The word “earth” in refers to the whole world that people live on.
* **created** - This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

# God Created the Plants 01-05

Then **God said**, “**Let the earth produce** **all kinds** of trees and plants.” And that is what happened. God saw that what he had **created** **was good**.

## Translation Notes:

* **God said** - God created all vegetation by speaking a command.
* **let the earth produce** - This is a command that happened immediately because God spoke it.
* **all kinds** - The many different species, or types, of plants and trees.
* **created** - This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.
* **was good** - This phrase is often repeated through the Creation story, and emphasizes that each stage of creation was pleasing to God and accomplished his plan and purpose.

# God Created the Sun, Moon and Stars 01-06

On **the fourth day** of creation, **God spoke** and made the sun, the moon, and the stars. **God** made them to give **light** to the earth and to mark **day and night, seasons and years**. God saw that what he had **created** was **good**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the fourth day** - The next in the orderly series of days in which God created.
* **God spoke** - God created the sun, moon, and stars by speaking a command.
* **light** - Shining objects in the sky now provided light for the earth.
* **day and night, seasons and years** - God created a different light to mark each portion of time from small to large, and set them to repeat continually until the end of time.
* **created** - This word is used here in the sense of making something out of nothing.

# God Created the Birds and Fish 01-07

On **the fifth day**, **God spoke** and made **everything that swims** in the water and **all the birds**. God saw that **it was good**, and he **blessed them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the fifth day** - God continues his orderly progression of creation that he started during the previous four days.
* **God spoke** - God created the birds and water creatures by speaking a command.
* **everything that swims** - God not only made fish, but every kind of living thing that lives in the waters. Every one exists because God chose to create it.
* **all the birds** - God did not make just one kind of bird, but all of the amazing variety of shapes, sizes, colors, and kinds of birds.
* **it was good** - This phrase is repeated throughout creation to show that every step went exactly according to God’s wise plan and purpose.
* **blessed them** - God speaks his desire that they would prosper and that things would go well for them in the world in which he had placed them.

# God Created the Animals 01-08

On **the sixth day** of creation, **God said**, “Let there be **all kinds** of **land animals**!” And it happened just like God said. Some were **farm animals**, some **crawled on the ground**, and some were **wild**. And God saw that **it was good**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the sixth day** - The next event in a continuing, orderly progression of days and creative acts.
* **God said** - God’s spoken word is the means by which the animals were created.
* **all kinds** - This indicates a great variety, but also order.
* **land animals** - Every kind of animal that lived on the land, as opposed to the birds, or animals that live in the seas.
* **farm animals** - The kinds of land animals that commonly live peacefully with people–-as in tame, or domesticated animals.
* **crawled on the ground** - This probably includes reptiles, and possibly the insects.
* **wild** - The kinds of animals that do not normally live peacefully with people, usually because they are afraid of people, or dangerous to them.
* **it was good** - This phrase is repeated throughout creation to show that every step went exactly according to God’s wise plan and purpose.

# God Made Man in His Image 01-09

Then **God** said, “**Let us** make human beings **in our image** to be **like us**. They will have **authority** over the earth and all the animals.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Let us** - This indicates God’s deliberate, willful decision to create man in a particular way for a particular purpose. You could translate this as, “We will make.”
* **us…our…us** - The Bible teaches that there is one God, but the Old Testament word “God” is a plural form, and God uses plural pronouns when speaking to himself. Some understand this as a special way of speaking that expresses God’s majesty, and others understand this as God the Father speaking to the Son and the Spirit, who are all God.
* **in our image** - An image is a physical representation of someone or something. Humans were made in such a way that we display or represent some of the qualities or traits of God.
* **like us** - Humans share some of God’s characteristics, but not all of his qualities. This phrase should be translated with words that show man is similar to God, but not equal with him or the same as he is.
* **authority** - God gave people the right and power to manage, guide, and control how the earth and the animals will be used.

# God Made Adam 01-10

So **God** **took some dirt**, **formed it** into **a man**, and **breathed life** into him. This man’s name was **Adam**. God planted a **garden** where Adam could live, and put him there to **care for it**.

## Translation Notes:

* **took some dirt** - God made man from the dust, or dry dirt from the ground. This word should probably be different from the general word used for earth.
* **formed it** - This word expresses that God personally fashioned the man, comparing this to how a person creates something with his hands. Make sure that a different word from “create” is used. Note that this is very different from how he created everything else through a simple spoken command.
* **a man** - Only the man was created at this time; the woman was created later by a different method.
* **breathed life** - This phrase expresses God’s very personal, intimate action as he transferred life from himself into Adam’s body, comparing this to how a human being breathes out air.
* **life** - In this event, God breathed both physical and spiritual life into the man.
* **Adam** - Adam’s name is the same as the Old Testament word for “man,” and similar to the word for “dirt” from which he was formed.
* **garden** - An area of land planted with trees and plants for a purpose–usually to produce food or to provide beauty.
* **care for it** - To maintain the garden by tending, weeding, watering, harvesting, planting, etc.

# Two Trees 01-11

**In the middle** of the **garden**, **God** planted two special trees—the **tree of life** and the **tree of the knowledge** of **good** and **evil**. God told **Adam** that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.

## Translation Notes:

* **in the middle** - The central location emphasizes the importance of the two trees.
* **garden** - An area of land planted with trees and plants for a purpose–usually to produce food or to provide beauty.
* **tree of life** - Anyone who ate fruit from this tree would never die.
* **tree of knowledge of good and evil** - The fruit of this tree could enable a person to know both good and evil.
* **knowledge** - To know or understand by personal experience. - **good and evil** - Evil is the opposite of good. Just as “good” refers to what is pleasing to God, “evil” refers to everything that is not pleasing to God.
* **die** - In this instance, he would die both physically and spiritually.

# Adam Was Alone 01-12

Then **God** said, “It is **not good** for man to be **alone**.” But none of the animals could be **Adam’s helper**.

## Translation Notes:

* **not good** - This is the first time that anything in creation was not good. It means it was, “not yet good” because God was not finished with the creation of humans.
* **alone** - Adam was the only human, with no possibility of a relationship with another person, and unable to reproduce children and multiply.
* **Adam’s helper** - There was no one who was similar enough to Adam to join with him to accomplish the task that God gave to him. None of the animals could do this.

# God Made Eve 01-13

So **God** made **Adam** fall into **a deep sleep**. Then God **took one of Adam’s ribs and made** it into **a woman** and **brought her to him**.

## Translation Notes:

* **a deep sleep** - This was a deeper sleep than normal. - **took one of Adam’s ribs and made** - The verbs indicate God’s very personal act of removing the rib from Adam and shaping it into a woman.
* **a woman** - She was the first woman, the female version of human beings that was missing until now.
* **brought her to him** - God personally introduced them. He presented the woman to Adam, almost like offering a special gift.

# Adam Met Eve 01-14

When **Adam** saw her, he said, “**At last**! This one is **like me**! Let her be called ‘**Woman**,’ for she was **made from Man**.” This is why **a man leaves** his father and mother and **becomes one** with his wife.

## Translation Notes:

* **At last!** - Adam’s exclamation indicates that he had been waiting for something like the woman.
* **like me** - The woman was the same type of being as Adam, even though there were important differences between them.
* **Woman** - This word is the feminine form of the word for man.
* **made from man** - The woman was formed directly from Adam’s own body.
* **a man leaves** - This is stated in the present tense to indicate what would become the normal situation in the future. Adam did not have a mother or father, but all other men would.
* **becomes one** - The husband and wife will share an intimate bond of unity and a commitment to one another that will surpass their relationships to anyone else.

# Fill the Earth 01-15

**God made** man and woman **in his own image**. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth!” And God saw that everything he had made was **very good**, and he was very pleased with all of it. This all happened on the sixth day of **creation**.

## Translation Notes:

* **God made** - God formed the man and the woman in a very personal way.
* **in his own image** - An image is a physical representation of someone or something. God made people to display or represent some of his qualities and traits, but not to be equal to him.
* **very good** - More intense than the, “it was good” statements on previous days. “Very good” refers to all of creation, not just the man and the woman. Everything was exactly as God intended it to be.
* **creation** - The six-day period during which God made everything that exists.

# God Rested 01-16

When **the seventh day** came, **God** had **finished his work**. So **God rested** from all he had been doing. He **blessed the seventh day** and **made it holy**, because on this day he rested from his work. This is how God created **the universe** and everything in it.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 1-2*

## Translation Notes:

* **the seventh day** - The next day after the six days of creation were completed.
* **finished his work** - Specifically, God finished the work of creation. He still performs other work.
* **God rested** - God “rested” in the sense that he stopped working because creation was complete. God was not tired, or unable to continue.
* **blessed the seventh day** - God had a special, positive plan for the seventh day, and for every seventh day to follow.
* **made it holy** - That is, God “set apart” the day as a special day. It was not to be used in the same way as the other six days of the week.
* **the universe** - This includes everything that God created on the earth and in the heavens, both visible and invisible things.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# A Perfect World 02-01

**Adam** and his wife were very happy living in the beautiful garden **God** had made for them. Neither of them wore clothes, but this did not cause them to feel any **shame**, because there was no **sin** in the world. They often walked in the garden and **talked with God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **garden** - A special collection of trees and plants that God prepared for Adam and Eve to enjoy and from which to eat. This should be the same word that was used in See how you translated it there.
* **talked with God** - The word for “talk” should be the same as would be used to refer to talking to a human being. God may have taken a physical form to talk to the man and the woman since the text indicates that they talked to him face-to-face.
* **shame** - The feeling that comes with knowing we have sinned or that we fall short in some way. Before sin came into the world, there was no sense of shame about being naked.

# The Snake 02-02

But there was a **crafty snake** in the garden. He asked the woman, “**Did God really tell you** not to eat the **fruit from any of the trees** in the garden?”

## Translation Notes:

* **crafty** - Clever and sly, with the intent to deceive. - **snake** - An elongated, legless land creature that now moves by wiggling on its belly. Although later on in the story it is revealed that the snake is Satan, this should not be said here in this frame.
* **Did God really tell you** - The snake asked the woman whether God actually said not to eat from any of the trees in the garden. But he was only pretending that he didn’t know what God had said because he wanted to create doubt in the woman’s mind. He wanted her to question God’s goodness.
* **fruit of any of the trees** - All of the various types of fruit from each of the different trees in the garden.

# Do Not Touch 02-03

The woman answered, “**God** told us we could eat the **fruit** of any tree except from the **tree of the knowledge of good and evil**. God told us, ‘If you eat that fruit or even touch it, **you will die**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **fruit** - We don’t know what kind of fruit this was. We only know that it grew on this tree. If possible it is best to use a general word for fruit here, and not a word for a specific kind of fruit.
* **tree of the knowledge of good and evil** - The woman correctly understood that they were not allowed to eat from this one tree that would enable them to understand evil as well as good.
* **you will die** - Use your ordinary word for death, for a person’s physical life to end. Don’t avoid the term just because the thought of death sounds too harsh.

# The Lie 02-04

The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not **die**. **God** just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be **like God** and will **understand good and evil** like he does.”

## Translation Notes:

* **like God** - The man and the woman were already made in the likeness of God. The snake is suggesting that the woman would be more like God if she understood evil. However, God never intended for her to have this knowledge.
* **understand good and evil** - To know from personal experience what things are good and what things are bad, or being able to know whether something is good or bad.

# Disobedience 02-05

The woman saw that the fruit was beautiful and looked delicious. She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it. Then she gave some to her husband, **who was with her**, and he ate it, too.

## Translation Notes:

* **wise** - The woman wanted to have insight and understanding like the snake seemed to have, and like God has.
* **who was with her** - This is important information because it shows that the man was present when the woman made the decision to eat the fruit.

# Open Eyes 02-06

Suddenly, **their eyes were opened**, and they realized **they were naked**. They tried to **cover their bodies** by sewing leaves together to make clothes.

## Translation Notes:

* **their eyes were opened** - This could be translated as, “they saw things differently.” This expression means they now understood something for the first time. In your language, there may be an expression with similar meaning that you could use to translate this.
* **realized they were naked** - After the man and the woman disobeyed God, they felt ashamed that they were naked. That is why they used leaves to try to cover their naked bodies.
* **cover their bodies** - The man and the woman attempted to use leaves to hide themselves from God.

# Where Are You? 02-07

Then the man and his wife heard the sound of **God walking** through the garden. They both hid from God. Then God called to the man, “**Where are you?**” **Adam** replied, “I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked. So I hid.”

## Translation Notes:

* **God walking** - It seems that God regularly came to the garden to walk and talk with the man and the woman. We do not know what this looked like. If it is possible, it is best to use the same word that would be used to talk about a person walking.
* **Where are you?** - God already knew the answer to this question. The purpose of the question was to force the man and the woman to explain why they were hiding.

# The Blame 02-08

Then **God** asked, “**Who told you that you were naked?** Did you eat the fruit I told you not to eat?” The man answered, “You gave me this woman, and **she gave me the fruit**.” Then God asked the woman, “What have you done?” The woman replied, “**The snake tricked me**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Who told you that you were naked?** - Or, “How did you find out that you were naked?” God already knows the answer to all of his questions. By asking this question and the following question, he was giving Adam the opportunity to admit his sin of disobedience. Being naked was not a sin. God created them that way. Their knowledge of their nakedness was the problem. Their shame showed that they had sinned.
* **she gave me the fruit** - The man blamed the woman rather than confessing his disobedience and accepting responsibility for disobeying God.
* **What have you done?** - Or, “Why have you done this?” God already knew the answer to this question. By asking this question, he was giving the woman the opportunity to admit her guilt. He was also implying that she should not have done what she did.
* **The snake tricked me** - The snake deceived or misled her. He lied to her. Don’t use a word that indicates that he cast a spell on her or bewitched her. The woman blamed the snake rather than confessing her disobedience and accepting responsibility for disobeying God.

# God Cursed the Snake 02-09

**God** said to the snake, “**You are cursed**! You will slide on your belly and eat dirt. You and the woman will **hate each other**, and your children and her children will hate each other, too. The **woman’s descendant** will **crush your head**, and you will **wound his heel**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **you are cursed** - This could also be translated as, “I curse you” or, “Great harm will come to you.” Do not use a word that implies magic.
* **hate each other** - The woman would hate the snake and the snake would hate the woman. The women’s descendants would also hate the snake’s descendants, and the snake’s descendants would hate them.
* **woman’s descendant** - Refers to one of her descendants in particular.
* **crush your head** - The descendant of the woman will destroy the descendant of the snake.
* **wound his heel** - The descendant of the snake will wound the descendant of the woman.

# God Cursed the Woman 02-10

**God** then said to the woman, “I will make **childbirth very painful** for you. You will desire your husband, and he will rule over you.”

## Translation Notes:

* **childbirth very painful** - Some languages may need to express this as a verb. You could say, “I will cause you to have much more pain when you give birth to children.”

# God Cursed the Man 02-11

**God** said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me. Now the **ground is cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food. Then **you will die**, and your body will **return to dirt**.” The man named his wife \*\*Eve, which means “life-giver\*\*,” because she would become the **mother of all people**. And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.

## Translation Notes:

* **ground is cursed** - As punishment for Adam’s disobedience, the earth would no longer be fruitful. Adam would have to work very hard to raise enough food to eat.
* **you will die** - The ultimate punishment for their disobedience was death. Spiritual death is our separation from God. Physical death is our separation from our body.
* **return to dirt** - God created Adam from the dirt or soil and gave him life. As a result of sin, his life will be taken from him and his body will decompose and become dirt again.
* **Eve, which means ‘life-giver’** - God gave life to Adam and Eve, and it is passed on to every person through childbirth.
* **mother of all people** - This means that she would be the female ancestor of all people. Some languages say “she would be the grandmother of all people.”

# Out of the Garden 02-12

Then **God** said, “Now that the human beings have become **like us by knowing good and evil**, they must not be allowed to eat the **fruit** of the **tree of life** and live forever.” So God sent **Adam** and **Eve** away from the beautiful garden. God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 3*

## Translation Notes:

* **like us by knowing good and evil** - Here, this phrase points to a new way that Adam and Eve would be like God. Because they had sinned, they were aware of evil and could experience it. You could say, “because now they knew both good and evil.”
* **fruit** - The specific kind of fruit is not revealed, so it is best to translate this using a general word for fruit.
* **tree of life** - This was an actual tree with fruit. See If a person ate this fruit he would live continually and never die.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Sin Increased 03-01

**After a long time**, many people were living in the world. They had become **very wicked and violent**. **It became so bad** that **God decided to destroy** the whole world with a **huge flood**.

## Translation Notes:

* **After a long time** - This story happens many generations after creation.
* **very wicked and violent** - It may be more natural to say, “had become wicked and did violent things”.
* **It became so bad** – It may be clearer to say, “People were behaving in such harmful and evil ways that God.”
* **God decided to destroy** - This does not mean that the earth would be destroyed completely. Rather God planned to destroy all the people who had rebelled against him and who had caused such evil and violence. This flood would also kill all the land animals and the birds.
* **huge flood** - Very deep water that would cover the earth, even in places where the ground was normally dry, and even covering the tops of the highest mountains.

# Noah Found Grace 03-02

But **Noah found favor** with **God**. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people. God told Noah about the flood He was **planning to send**. He told Noah to build a huge boat.

## Translation Notes:

* **found favor** - God was pleased with Noah because he feared and obeyed God. So even though Noah was not sinless, God was gracious to him and made a plan to rescue his family from the devastating flood. Make sure this doesn’t sound like Noah was lucky or that he just happened to escape. Rather, it was God’s choice.
* **the flood** - See how you translated this in - **planning to send** - God planned to cause deep water to cover the earth by sending a lot of rain. That is, he planned to cause the flood by causing a lot of rain to fall.

# The Big Boat 03-03

**God** told **Noah** to make **the boat** about 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 13.5 meters high. Noah was to build it with wood and to make three levels, many rooms, a roof, and a window. The boat would keep Noah, his family, and every kind of land animal safe during the flood.

## Translation Notes:

* **the boat** - The boat was big enough to carry eight people, two of every kind of animal, and their provisions for almost a year.

# Building the Boat 03-04

**Noah** **obeyed** **God**. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them. It took many years to build the boat, because it was so big. **Noah warned** the people about the flood that was coming and told them to **turn to God**, but they did not believe him.

## Translation Notes:

* **Noah warned** - Noah told everyone that God planned to destroy the world because of sin.
* **turn to God** - This means that they should stop sinning and start obeying God.

# Loading the Boat 03-05

**God** also commanded **Noah** and his family to gather enough food for themselves and the animals. When everything was ready, God told Noah it was time for him, his wife, his three sons, and their wives to get into the boat—eight people in all.

## Translation Notes:

\*\*

# The Animals Came 03-06

**God sent** a male and a female of every animal and bird to **Noah** so they could go into the boat and be kept safe during the flood. God sent seven males and seven females of every type of animal that could be **used for sacrifices**. When they were all in the boat, **God himself closed the door**.

## Translation Notes:

* **God sent** - Noah did not need to find the animals. God sent them to him.
* **used for sacrifices** - For some languages it may be better to say something like, “animals that were acceptable to sacrifice to God.” God had decided that people should sacrifice animals to him, but he only permitted them to sacrifice certain kinds of animals.
* **God himself closed the door** - This emphasizes that it was God who shut the door.

# The Rain Began 03-07

Then it began to **rain, and rain, and rain**. It rained for forty days and forty nights without stopping! Water also came **gushing** up out of the earth. Everything in the **whole world was covered** with water, even the highest mountains.

## Translation Notes:

* **rain, and rain, and rain** - This emphasizes that there was an unusual, extreme amount of rain. Other languages may have a different way of emphasizing this.
* **gushing** - This indicates that there was a large amount of water coming out.
* **whole world was covered** - This refers to all the earth being covered with water from the flood.

# Safe from the Flood 03-08

Everything that lived on the dry land **died**, except the people and animals that were in the boat. The boat floated on the water and kept everything inside the boat safe from drowning.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# The Rain Stopped 03-09

After **the rains stopped**, the boat floated on the water for five months, and during this time the water started going down. Then one day the **boat rested** on the top of a mountain, but the world was still covered with water. After **three more months**, the tops of the **mountains were visible**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the rains stopped** – This could be translated as, “it stopped raining.”
* **boat rested** - There was so much water from the rain that it covered the mountains. The ship floated over the mountains, and when the water started to go down, the ship went down with the water and settled on a mountain.
* **three more months** - During the next three months, the water continued to go down.
* **mountains were visible** - Other ways to translate this would be, “were showing” or, “appeared” or, “could be seen.” It may be more clear to say, “After three months, the water had gone down enough so that Noah and his family could clearly see the tops of the mountains.

# The Raven 03-10

After forty more days, **Noah** sent out a bird called a **raven** to see if the water had dried up. The raven flew back and forth looking for dry land, but it could not find any.

## Translation Notes:

* **raven** - A black bird that flies and eats a variety of plant and animal foods, including the rotting flesh of dead animals.

# The Dove 03-11

Later **Noah** sent out a bird called a **dove**. But it also could not find any dry land, so it came back to Noah. A week later he sent the dove out again, and it came back with an **olive branch** in its beak! **The water was going down**, and the plants were growing again!

## Translation Notes:

* **dove** - A small, white or gray flying bird that eats seeds or fruit.
* **olive branch** - An olive tree’s fruit contains oil which people use for cooking or putting on their skin. If your language does not have a word for “olive branch,” you could translate it as, “branch from a tree called ‘olive’” or, “branch from an oil-tree.”
* **water was going down** - It may be more natural in your language to say that, “the water was going away” or, “the level of the water was getting lower.”

# Dry Land 03-12

**Noah** **waited another week** and sent out the dove a third time. This time, it found a place to rest and did not come back. The water was drying up!

## Translation Notes:

* **waited another week** - You could say, “waited seven more days.” The word “waited” shows that Noah was allowing time for the floodwaters to go down before sending out the dove again.

# Leaving the Boat 03-13

**Two months later God** said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. **Have many children** and grandchildren and **fill the earth**.” So Noah and his family came out of the boat.

## Translation Notes:

* **Two months later** - This means two months after Noah released the dove from the ark. It may be necessary to say this explicitly if it is not clear.
* **Have many children** – To make sure it is clear that this was God’s command and desire, you could say, “You must have many children.” or, “I want you to have many children.”
* **fill the earth** - If this is not clear, it may be necessary to say, “and fill the earth with people” or, “so that there will be many people living on the earth.”

# Noah’s Sacrifice 03-14

After **Noah** got off the boat, he built an **altar** and **sacrificed** some of each kind of **animal that could be used for a sacrifice**. **God was happy** with the sacrifice and **blessed** Noah and his family.

## Translation Notes:

* **animal that could be used for a sacrifice** - Another way to say this would be, “that people could use to sacrifice to him.”
* **God was happy** - God was pleased with Noah for sacrificing these animals.

# God’s Promise 03-15

**God** said, “I **promise** I will **never again** **curse** the ground because of the **evil** things that people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though **people are sinful from the time they are children**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **never again** - This means, “not ever again” or, “not again at any time” or, “truly not again”. Examples: “I will not ever again curse the ground” or, “I will not curse the ground again at any time” or, “I will truly not curse the ground again”.
* **curse the ground** - The earth and the other creatures suffered because of man’s sin.
* **the world** – This refers to the earth and the living creatures that lived on it.
* **people are sinful from the time they are children** - Another way to say this would be, “people do sinful things their entire lives.”

# The Rainbow 03-16

**God** then made the first **rainbow** as **a sign of his promise**. **Every time** the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember **what he promised** and so would his people.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 6-8*

## Translation Notes:

* **rainbow** - This is the multicolored arc of light that often appears in the sky after a rainstorm.
* **a sign** - A sign is something that gives a certain meaning or which points to something that is true or will happen.
* **as a sign of his promise** – In some languages it may be better to say, “to show that he had promised.”
* **Every time** – Make sure it is clear that this means every time a rainbow appeared from that time on. It may be necessary to add, “From then on, every time.”
* **what he promised** - This refers back to the previous frame in which God promised to never again destroy the earth with a flood.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# One People 04-01

**Many years after the flood**, there were **again many people** in the world, and they all spoke the **same language**. Instead of filling the earth as **God** had commanded, they gathered together and built **a city**.

## Translation Notes:

* **many years after the flood** - Many generations had passed since the end of the flood.
* **again many people** - Noah’s family multiplied into enough people to fill a city.
* **same language** - This means there was only one language, so they could all understand each other.
* **a city** - It is best to use a general word for “city” since the text does not give a specific name.

# The Tower 04-02

They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what **God** said. They even began building a **tall tower to reach heaven**. God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more **sinful** things.

## Translation Notes:

* **tall tower to reach heaven** - This structure was so tall that its top would be in the sky.
* **heaven** – This could be translated as, “sky.”

# Many Languages 04-03

So **God changed their language** into **many different languages** and **spread the people** out all over the world. The city they had begun to build was called **Babel**, which means, “**confused**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **changed their language** – In an instant, God miraculously gave them different languages to speak so that suddenly they were no longer able to understand each other.
* **many different languages** – Instead of one large group of people speaking one language, there were now many smaller people groups each speaking its own separate language.
* **spread the people** - When God changed their languages, he caused these groups of people to scatter out on the earth and each group moved to its own area.
* **Babel** - We don’t know the exact location of this city, other than it was somewhere in the ancient Middle East.
* **confused** - This refers to how the people were confused or, “mixed-up” when they could no longer understand each other after God changed their language.

# God Chose Abram 04-04

**Hundreds of years later, God** spoke to a man named **Abram**. God told him, “**Leave your country** **and family** and go to the land I will show you. I will **bless** you and **make you a great nation**. I will **make your name great**. I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who curse you. **All families on earth** will be blessed because of you.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Hundreds of years later** – This could be translated as, ”many generations after the people split into different language groups at Babel.” or, ”a long time after that happened.”
* **Leave your country** - This refers to the area where Abram was born and grew up . It could be translated as, “native region” or, “homeland” or something similar.
* **and family** – God was calling Abram to leave behind most of his relatives. However, God was not telling Abram to abandon the people he was responsible for, including his wife.
* **make you a great nation** - God would cause Abram to have many descendants, and they would become a large and important nation or country.
* **make your name great** - This means that Abram’s name and family would become well-known throughout the world and people would think well of them.
* **all families on earth** - Abram’s decision to follow God would affect not only his own family, but also families from every people group on earth.

# To Canaan 04-05

So **Abram** **obeyed** **God**. **He took** his wife, **Sarai**, together with all of his **servants** and everything he owned and went to the land **God showed him**, the **land of Canaan**.

## Translation Notes:

* **He took** – Some languages would say, “He brought” here. Others would use two different verbs here, such as, “He caused his wife to come with him” and, “He brought along all of their servants and possessions.”
* **God showed him** - Somehow God made it clear to Abram where he was to go. The text doesn’t tell how God showed him.
* **land of Canaan** - The name of this land was “Canaan”. This could be translated, “the land called Canaan.”

# God Blessed Abram 04-06

When **Abram** arrived in **Canaan**, **God** said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your **descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance**”. **Then Abram settled in the land**.

## Translation Notes:

* **all the land that you can see** - If Abram was standing on a mountain, he could have seen a very large area. On several occasions God promised to give the entire land of Canaan to Abram and his descendants.
* **as an inheritance** - God promised to give land to Abram and his descendants as a father gives land and possessions to his children.
* **Then Abram settled in the land** - Abram lived there along with all those who had gone there with him.

# Melchizedek 04-07

One day, **Abram** met **Melchizedek**, the **priest** of **God Most High**. Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who **owns heaven and earth** bless Abram.” Then Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of all he owned.

## Translation Notes:

* **Melchizedek** - Melchizedek was the recognized religious authority in Canaan who received and presented offerings to God.
* **God Most High** - The people of Canaan worshiped many false gods. The title, “Most High God” explains that the God that Melchizedek worshiped was far superior to all of them, and was the same God that Abram worshiped.

# No Son 04-08

**Many years** went by, but **Abram** and **Sarai** still did not have a **son**. **God** spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many **descendants as the stars in the sky**. Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.

## Translation Notes:

* **Many years** - Several years had passed since God had first promised that Abram would have a son.
* **as the stars in the sky** - This expression means that Abram’s descendants will be so many that no one can count them all.

# God’s Covenant 04-09

Then **God** made a **covenant** with **Abram**. A covenant is an agreement between **two parties**. God said, “I will give you a **son from your own body**. I give the land of **Canaan** to your **descendants**.” But Abram still **did not have a son**.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 11-15*

## Translation Notes:

* **two parties** - The parties could be two people, two groups of people, or a person and a group of people. In this case the agreement was between God and Abram.
* **from your own body** - With his own body Abram would cause his wife to become pregnant, so that together they would have their own, natural son. This was an amazing promise, since Abram and Sarai were very old.
* **did not have a son** - Abram still did not have any descendants who could possess the land.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Hagar 05-01

Ten years after **Abram** and **Sarai** arrived in **Canaan**, **they still did not have a child**. So Abram’s wife, Sarai, said to him, “Since **God** has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my **servant, Hagar**. **Marry her also** so she can **have a child for me**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **still did not have a child** - Without a child, Abram had no descendants to become a great nation.
* **Marry her also** - Abram would take Hagar as a second wife, but Hagar would not have the full status of a wife as Sarai did. She was still Sarai’s servant.
* **have a child for me** - Since Hagar was Sarai’s servant, Sarai would be considered the mother of any children that Hagar bore.

# Ishmael Was Born 05-02

So **Abram married Hagar**. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**. But **Sarai became jealous of Hagar**. When Ishmael was thirteen years old, **God** again spoke to Abram.

## Translation Notes:

* **married** - Hagar became Abram’s concubine–a “second wife” of lower status. Hagar was still Sarai’s servant.
* **became jealous of Hagar** - Sarai was jealous of Hagar because Hagar could have children and Sarai could not.

# God Renewed the Covenant 05-03

God said, “I am **God** Almighty. I will make a **covenant** with you.” Then **Abram** bowed to the ground. God also told Abram, “You will be the **father of many nations**. I will give you and your **descendants** the land of **Canaan** as their possession and **I will be their God** forever. You must **circumcise** **every male in your family**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **father of many nations** - Abram would have many descendants, and they would have their own lands and rule themselves. They and others would remember that Abram was their ancestor and would honor him.
* **I will be their God** - Another way to say this is, “I will be the God that they will worship.”
* **every male in your family** - This could be translated as, “every boy and man in your family.” This included Abram’s servants and his descendants.

# God Promised Isaac’s Birth 05-04

“Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the **son of promise**. Name him **Isaac**. **I will make my covenant with him**, and he will become a great nation. I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.” Then **God** changed **Abram’s** name to **Abraham**, which means “**father of many**.” God also changed Sarai’s name to **Sarah**, which means “**princess**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **son of promise** - Isaac would be the son that God promised to Sarai and Abram. He would also be the son that God would use to give Abram many descendants.
* **I will make my covenant with him** - This would be the same covenant that God made with Abram.
* **father of many** - As God had promised, Abraham would become the ancestor of many people who would even become many nations.
* **princess** - A princess is a daughter of a king. The names Sarai and Sarah apparently both meant “princess.” But God changed her name to signify that she would be the mother of many nations, and some of her descendants would be kings.

# Birth of Isaac 05-05

That day **Abraham** **circumcised** **all the males in his household**. About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**. They named him **Isaac** as **God** had told them to do.

## Translation Notes:

* **all the males in his household** - This means all of the men and boys that Abraham was responsible for, including his male servants, young and old.

# Test of Faith 05-06

When **Isaac** was a young man, **God tested Abraham’s faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only **son**, and **kill him** as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham **obeyed** God and **prepared to sacrifice** his son.

## Translation Notes:

* **God tested Abraham’s faith** - God wanted Abraham to show that he was completely submitted to God, that he would obey whatever God told him to do.
* **kill him** - God did not want human sacrifice. God wanted to see that Abraham loved God more than he loved his son and would obey God even when God told him to give his son back to God.
* **prepared to sacrifice** - Abraham got ready to sacrifice his son. God stopped him before he killed his son.

# God Will Provide 05-07

As **Abraham** and **Isaac** **walked to the place of sacrifice**, Isaac asked, “Father, we have **wood for the sacrifice**, but where is **the lamb**?” Abraham replied, “**God** will provide the lamb for the sacrifice, my son.”

## Translation Notes:

* **walked to the place of sacrifice** - God had told Abraham to sacrifice Isaac on a special high hill that was about three days’ walk from where they lived.
* **wood for the sacrifice** - For a sacrifice, normally the lamb was killed and then placed on top of wood so that the wood and the lamb could be burned up with fire.
* **the lamb** - A young sheep or goat would be the normal animal for a sacrifice.
* **provide** - Abraham may have believed that Isaac was the “lamb” that God provided, although God fulfilled Abraham’s words by providing a ram to sacrifice in Isaac’s place.

# The Sacrifice 05-08

When they reached the place of **sacrifice**, **Abraham** tied up his **son** **Isaac** and laid him on an **altar**. He was about to **kill his son** when **God** said, “**Stop! Do not hurt the boy!** Now I know that **you fear me** because you did not keep **your only son** from me.”

## Translation Notes:

* **kill his son** - God did not want human sacrifice. God wanted to see that Abraham loved God more than he loved his son and would obey God even when God told him to give his son back to God.
* **Stop! Do no hurt the boy!** - God protected Isaac and kept Abraham from killing him.
* **you fear me** - Abraham feared God, which included respect and reverence for God. Because of those things, he obeyed God.
* **your only son** - Ishmael was also Abraham’s son, but Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God’s covenant was with Isaac and it was through Isaac that God would fulfill his promise.

# The Ram 05-09

Nearby **Abraham** saw **a ram** that was stuck in a bush. **God had provided the ram** to be the **sacrifice** instead of **Isaac**. Abraham happily offered the ram as a sacrifice.

## Translation Notes:

* **a ram** - A ram is a male goat. Goats were one of the animals that people could sacrifice to God.
* **God had provided the ram** - Just at the right moment, God caused the ram to be stuck in the bush.

# The Blessing 05-10

Then **God** said to **Abraham**, “Because you were willing to give me everything, even **your only son**, I **promise** to **bless** you. Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky. Because you have **obeyed** me, **all the families of the world** will be **blessed through your family**.”

*A Bible story from: Genesis 16-22*

## Translation Notes:

* **your only son** - See explanation in - **the stars in the sky**
* See explanation in - **all the families of the world** - Here, “families” refers to the larger distinct groups of people on earth, rather than to each set of parents and children.
* **blessed through your family** - Here, “family” refers to the many descendants that Abraham would have. The future generations of the world would be blessed through Abraham’s descendants. The greatest blessing would come many generations later through God’s chosen servant, the Messiah.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# A Wife for Isaac 06-01

When **Abraham** was very old, his **son**, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man. So Abraham **sent one of his servants back** **to the land** where his relatives lived **to bring back a wife for his son, Isaac**.

## Translation Notes:

* **sent one of his servants back** – This could be translated as, “told one of his servants to go back.” The word “back” means that the servant would be going to the same place where Abraham used to live long ago before he came to Canaan. Make sure the translation of this phrase makes that clear.
* **to the land** - This land was east of where Abraham was now living.
* **to bring back a wife for his son, Isaac** - This could be translated as, “to bring back an unmarried woman for his son, Isaac, to marry”.

# Finding Rebekah 06-02

After a very long journey to the land where **Abraham’s** relatives lived, **God** led the **servant** to **Rebekah**. She was the **granddaughter of Abraham’s brother**.

## Translation Notes:

* **granddaughter of Abraham’s brother** - Specifically, she was the daughter of Abraham’s brother’s son. Her grandfather was Abraham’s brother.

# Isaac Married Rebekah 06-03

**Rebekah agreed** to leave her family and go back with the **servant** to **Isaac’s** home. Isaac married her as soon as she arrived.

## Translation Notes:

* **Rebekah agreed** - Even though Rebekah’s parents were arranging her marriage, they did not force her to go marry Isaac.

# Rebekah Was Childless 06-04

After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of **the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on** to **Isaac**. God had promised that Abraham would have **countless descendants**, but Isaac’s wife, **Rebekah**, could not have children.

## Translation Notes:

* **the promises … were passed on** - The promises of the covenant that God made with Abraham were not for him only, but also for his descendants.
* **countless** - This could also be translated as, “very many.” The word “countless” means there would be so many descendants that people would not be able to count them.

# Rebekah Became Pregnant 06-05

**Isaac** prayed for **Rebekah**, and **God** allowed her to get pregnant with twins. The two babies struggled with each other while they were still **in Rebekah’s womb**, so Rebekah asked God what was happening.

## Translation Notes:

* **in Rebekah’s womb** - That is, “inside her.”

# Two Nations 06-06

**God** told **Rebekah**, “Two nations will come **from the two sons** inside of you. **They will struggle with each other** and **the older son** will **serve the younger one**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **from the two sons** - That is, “from the descendants of the two sons.”
* **They will struggle with each other** - Both the two sons and the nations that will come from them will continually fight with each other. Compare to
* **the older son** - Even though the babies were twins, the baby that came out first would be treated as the older son.
* **serve the younger one** – This could be translated as, “the older son will have to do what the younger one tells him to do.”

# Twins Were Born 06-07

When **Rebekah’s babies were born**, **the older son** came out **red** and **hairy**, and they named him **Esau**. Then **the younger son** came out holding on to Esau’s heel, and they named him **Jacob**.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 24:1-25:26*

## Translation Notes:

* **Rebekah’s babies were born** - Some languages have a more indirect way of saying this such as, “when Rebekah saw and took them” or, “when Rebekah brought them to light.”
* **the older son … the younger son** - This could be translated as, “the first son to come out … the second son to come out.” Make sure that the way “older” and “younger” are translated still communicates that the boys were twins.
* **red** - This may mean that his skin was very red or that the hair on his body was red.
* **hairy** - Esau had a lot of hair on his body. You could say, “the older son’s body was red, with lots of hair.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Boys Grew Up 07-01

As the boys grew up, **Jacob loved to stay at home**, but **Esau loved to hunt**. **Rebekah loved Jacob**, **but Isaac loved Esau**.

## Translation Notes:

* **loved to stay at home … loved to hunt** - Some languages will use a word for “love” here that is different from the one used for, “Rebekah loved Jacob.” For example, this could be translated as, “liked to stay at home … liked to hunt” or, “preferred to stay at home … preferred to hunt.”
* **at home** - This expression refers to the area around the family dwellings. Jacob preferred to stay close to the tents where they lived. Some languages have a special expression for, “at home.”
* **Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau** - This could be translated as, “Rebekah was more fond of Jacob, and Isaac was more fond of Esau.” This does not necessarily mean that Rebekah and Isaac did not love the other son, but that each parent had a favorite.

# Esau Sold His Rights 07-02

One day, when **Esau** came back from hunting, he was very hungry. Esau said to **Jacob**, “Please **give me some of the food** you have made.” Jacob responded, “First, **give me your rights as the oldest son**.” So Esau gave Jacob his **rights as the oldest son**. Then Jacob gave him some food.

## Translation Notes:

* **give me some of the food … give me your rights** – Some languages may prefer to use two different words for “give” here. This would also apply to, “Esau gave … Jacob gave” in the last two sentences.
* **rights as the oldest son** - According to their custom, since Esau was the oldest son, he should have been the one to receive twice as much of their father’s wealth when their father died. Jacob thought of a way to take these rights of the oldest son from Esau.

# Rebekah and Jacob Tricked Isaac 07-03

**Isaac** wanted to **give his blessing** to **Esau**. But before he did, **Rebekah** and **Jacob tricked him** by having Jacob **pretend** to be Esau. Isaac was old and could no longer see. So Jacob put on Esau’s clothes and put **goatskins** on his neck and hands.

## Translation Notes:

* **give his blessing** - It was customary for fathers to formally express their desire for good things to happen to their children. Normally the older son received the best promise. Isaac wanted this extra prosperity to happen to Esau.
* **tricked him** - The word “trick” means to do something to deliberately deceive someone. Rebekah came up with a plan to deceive Isaac into giving Jacob the special blessing instead of Esau.
* **pretend** - The word “pretend” shows how Jacob would deceive his father .
* **goatskins** - The hairiness of the goatskins would make Jacob feel like Esau.

# Isaac Blessed Jacob 07-04

**Jacob came to Isaac** and said, “I am **Esau**. I have come so that you can **bless** me.” When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, **he thought it was Esau** and blessed him.

## Translation Notes:

* **Jacob came to Isaac** - In some languages it might be more natural to say, “Jacob went to Isaac.”
* **he thought it was Esau** - He thought that the person he was touching and smelling was Esau.

# Esau Hated Jacob 07-05

**Esau** hated **Jacob** because Jacob had stolen his **rights as oldest son** and also **his blessing**. So he planned to kill Jacob after their father died.

## Translation Notes:

* **rights as oldest son** - Jacob found a way to get the larger portion of their father’s wealth that should have gone to Esau as the older son. See also note on
* **his blessing** - Jacob also tricked their father into giving him the promise of extra prosperity that Isaac intended to give to Esau. See also note on

# Isaac Sent Jacob Away 07-06

But **Rebekah** heard of **Esau’s plan**. So **she and Isaac sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Esau’s plan** - Esau’s plan was to kill Jacob after his father died.
* **she and Isaac sent Jacob** – Rebekah wanted to protect Jacob from Esau so she talked to Isaac about sending Jacob away.
* **far away to live with her relatives** - This was the same place where Rebekah was living when Abraham’s servant got her to be Isaac’s wife. To make this clear, you could add, “relatives in the same land where she used to live.” The land was to the east, several hundred miles away.
* **her relatives** - This could also be translated as, “their relatives.” Since Abraham’s brother was Rebekah’s grandfather, her relatives were also Isaac’s relatives.

# Jacob Prospered 07-07

**Jacob** lived with **Rebekah’s** relatives for many years. During that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. **God** made him very **wealthy**.

## Translation Notes:

* **wealthy** – This included money, large herds of animals and other possessions.

# Jacob Returned Home 07-08

**After twenty years** away from his home in **Canaan**, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his **servants**, and all his herds of animals.

## Translation Notes:

* **after twenty years** - Jacob had lived for twenty years in the land where his mother was from. If that is not clear you could say, “After twenty years living in the land where his relatives were.”

# Jacob Met Esau 07-09

**Jacob** was very afraid because he thought **Esau** still wanted to kill him. So he sent many herds of animals to Esau as a gift. The **servants** who brought the animals said to Esau, “**Your servant, Jacob**, is giving you these animals. He is coming soon.”

## Translation Notes:

* **your servant, Jacob** - Jacob was not actually Esau’s servant. But Jacob told his servants to say this because he wanted to show Esau that he was coming to him humbly and respectfully, so that Esau would no longer be angry with him.

# The Brothers Were Reunited 07-10

But **Esau** had already **forgiven** **Jacob**, and they were happy to see each other again. Jacob then **lived peacefully** in **Canaan**. Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau **buried him**. The **covenant** **promises** **God** had promised to **Abraham** now **passed on from Isaac to Jacob**.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 25:27-33:20*

## Translation Notes:

* **lived peacefully** - This refers to the fact that Esau and Jacob were not angry at each other and did not fight with each other.
* **buried him** - This could mean that they dug a hole in the ground, placed Isaac’s body in it, and covered the hole with dirt or stones. Or it could mean that they placed Isaac’s body in a cave and covered the opening.
* **covenant promises** - These were the promises that God made in his covenant with Abraham.
* **passed on from Isaac to Jacob** - The promises went from Abraham to his son Isaac, and now to Isaac’s son Jacob. Esau did not receive the promises. See also
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Joseph, the Favorite Son 08-01

Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he **sent** his **favorite son**, **Joseph**, to **check on** his **brothers** who were **taking care of the herds**.

## Translation Notes:

* **sent** – This word means that Jacob told Joseph to go and Joseph went.
* **favorite son** - This could be translated as, “the son he loved more than any of his other children.”
* **check on** - This means that Joseph is to go and see if everything is all right with his brothers. Some languages might say something like, “to see his brothers’ well-being.”
* **brothers** - These were Joseph’s older brothers. - **taking care of the herds** – Since this was several days’ journey away, it may be necessary to say, “who were far away taking care of.”

# Joseph Was Sold as a Slave 08-02

**Joseph’s** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler. When Joseph **came to his brothers**, they **kidnapped** him and sold him to some **slave traders**.

## Translation Notes:

* **came to his brothers** – Another way this could be translated is, “reached the place where his brothers were.”
* **kidnapped** - They took him against his will. It was not right for them to do this.
* **slave traders** - These were people who made a business of buying people from one owner and selling them as slaves to another owner.

# The Brothers’ Lie 08-03

Before **Joseph’s** brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in **goat’s blood**. Then they showed the robe to their father so he would think that a wild animal had killed Joseph. **Jacob** was very sad.

## Translation Notes:

* **goat’s blood** - The brothers wanted Jacob to think that the blood on the clothes was Joseph’s blood.

# Joseph in Egypt 08-04

The **slave** traders took **Joseph** to **Egypt**. Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**. The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy **government official**. Joseph served his master well, and **God** **blessed** Joseph.

## Translation Notes:

* **government official** - This was a person who was part of the Egyptian government. Another way to say this would be, “a leader in Egypt’s government.”

# Joseph in Prison 08-05

His master’s wife **tried to sleep with Joseph**, but Joseph refused to **sin against God** in this way. She became angry and falsely accused Joseph so that he was arrested and sent to prison. Even in prison, Joseph **remained faithful to God**, and God **blessed** him.

## Translation Notes:

* **tried to sleep with Joseph** – Another way to say this would be, “tried to seduce Joseph to have sex with her.” To “sleep with” is a way of expressing this in order not to be crude or offensive.
* **sin against God** - It is against God’s law for people to have sex if they are not married to each other. Joseph did not want to sin by disobeying God’s law.
* **remained faithful to God** - Another way to say this would be, “continued to obey God.”

# Pharaoh’s Dream 08-06

After two years, **Joseph** was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**. One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the **Egyptians** called their **kings**, had two **dreams** that **disturbed him greatly**. None of **his advisors** could tell him the **meaning of the dreams**.

## Translation Notes:

* **disturbed him greatly** – This means that the king felt very afraid and confused .
* **his advisors** - These were men with special powers and knowledge who could sometimes tell what dreams meant. Some translations refer to them as, “wise men.”
* **meaning of the dreams** - People in Egypt believed that dreams were messages from the gods telling them about what would happen in the future. God used Pharaoh’s dreams to tell him what would happen.

# Joseph Interpreted the Dream 08-07

**God** had given **Joseph** the ability to **interpret dreams**, so **Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him** from the prison. Joseph interpreted the dreams for him and said, “**God is going to send** seven years of plentiful harvests, followed by seven years of **famine**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **interpret dreams** - To “interpret” is to tell what something means. So Joseph was able to tell people what their dreams meant.
* **had Joseph brought to him** - Another way to say this would be, “ordered his servants to bring Joseph to him.”
* **God is going to send** - God will cause the crops to grow well for seven years, and after that He will cause them to produce very little food so that the people and animals will not have enough to eat.
* **famine** - The gardens and fields would produce so little food that people and animals would not have enough to eat.

# Joseph Ruled Egypt 08-08

**Pharaoh** was so **impressed with Joseph** that he appointed him to be the **second most powerful man** in all of **Egypt**!

## Translation Notes:

* **impressed with** - Pharaoh was amazed by Joseph’s wisdom and felt respect for him; he trusted Joseph to make wise decisions that would benefit the people. It may be clearer to say, “impressed with Joseph’s wisdom.”
* **second most powerful man** - Pharaoh made Joseph a very powerful and important ruler over all of Egypt. Only Pharaoh was more powerful and important than Joseph.

# Joseph Stored Up Food 08-09

**Joseph** told the people to **store up large amounts of food** during the seven years of good harvests. Then Joseph sold the food to the people when the seven years of **famine** came so they would have enough to eat.

## Translation Notes:

* **store up large amounts of food** - They took food from the abundant harvests to the cities and stored it there. The food then belonged to Pharaoh.
* **famine** - See how you translated this in

# The Famine 08-10

**The famine was severe** not only in **Egypt**, but also in **Canaan** where **Jacob** and his family lived.

## Translation Notes:

* **Egypt, but also Canaan** – For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to say, “the country of Egypt, but also the land of Canaan.”
* **The famine was severe** - The famine was very bad. There was very little food and many people outside of Egypt were starving.

# The Brothers Bought Food 08-11

So **Jacob** sent **his older sons** to **Egypt** to buy food. The brothers **did not recognize Joseph** when they stood before him to buy food. But Joseph recognized them.

## Translation Notes:

* **his older sons** - These were Joseph’s older brothers who had sold him into slavery.
* **did not recognize Joseph** - They did not know that the man was Joseph, because now Joseph was much older than when they last saw him, and he was dressed as an Egyptian ruler.

# Joseph Met His Brothers 08-12

After **testing his brothers** to see **if they had changed**, **Joseph** said to them, “I am your brother, Joseph! **Do not be afraid**. You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a **slave**, but **God** used the **evil for good**! Come and live in **Egypt** so I can provide for you and your families.”

## Translation Notes:

* **testing his brothers** - Joseph placed his older brothers in a difficult situation to see if they would protect their youngest brother, or treat him as badly as they had treated Joseph. When they protected their youngest brother, Joseph knew they had changed.
* **if they had changed** - Another way to say this would be, “if they were different than they used to be.” Years ago Joseph’s brothers sold him into slavery. Joseph wanted to find out if they would now do what was right.
* **do not be afraid** - Another way to say this would be, “You do not need to fear any punishment from me.” Joseph’s brothers were afraid because they had greatly wronged Joseph and now as a great ruler he had the power to punish them. Joseph could refuse to sell them food, or even put them in prison or kill them.
* **evil for good** - Joseph’s brothers did an evil thing when they sold Joseph as a slave and he was taken to Egypt. But God allowed this so that Joseph could save thousands of people from starving during the famine, including his own family. This was a very good thing.

# Joseph Was Alive 08-13

When **Joseph’s** brothers returned home and told their father, **Jacob**, that Joseph was still alive, he was very happy.

## Translation Notes:

\*\*

# Jacob Went to Egypt 08-14

**Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there. **Before Jacob died**, he **blessed** each of his sons.

## Translation Notes:

* **Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt** - Egypt was a great distance away from Canaan, and it would have been difficult for an elderly man to walk or ride a cart that far.
* **Before Jacob died** - Jacob died in Egypt. He did not get to return to Canaan, the land God had promised to give to him and his descendants.

# The Twelve Sons 08-15

The **covenant** **promises** that **God** gave to **Abraham** were **passed on to** **Isaac**, then to **Jacob**, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families. The **descendants** of the twelve sons became the **twelve tribes of Israel**.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 37-50*

## Translation Notes:

* **covenant promises** - Long ago God made an agreement with Abraham and promised him that he would give him many descendants; they would possess the land of Canaan and become a great nation. God also promised that all peoples would be blessed through Abraham’s line. See also
* **passed on to** - Another way to say this would be, “passed down to” or, “given to” or, “applied to.” God’s promise to Abraham was also for Abraham’s children, grandchildren and all the rest of his descendants. See also
* **twelve tribes of Israel** - God had promised Abraham, Isaac and Jacob that their descendants would become a great nation. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob’s 12 sons became 12 great tribes. These 12 tribes made up the ancient nation called Israel, which was named by Jacob’s new name.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Israelites 09-01

After **Joseph** died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**. They and their **descendants** continued to live there for many years and had many children. They were called the **Israelites**.

## Translation Notes:

\*\*

# A New Pharaoh 09-02

After hundreds of years, the number of **Israelites** had become very large. The **Egyptians** no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them. They became afraid of the Israelites because there were so many of them. So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling Egypt at that time **made the Israelites slaves** to the Egyptians.

## Translation Notes:

* **Pharaoh** – “Pharaoh” is an Egyptian word that refers to their king. This Pharaoh was probably the son of a former Pharaoh who had died, who may have been a descendant of the Pharaoh that Joseph knew.
* **made the Israelites slaves** - That is, “forced the Israelites to do hard labor against their will and treated them very harshly.”

# Hard Labor 09-03

The **Egyptians** forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. The hard work made their lives **miserable**, but **God blessed them**, and they had even more children.

## Translation Notes:

* **miserable** – This means that they suffered terribly because of how harshly they were treated and how hard they were forced to work. They also felt very discouraged.
* **God blessed them** - God took care of them, helping them endure the severe treatment and even caused them to become more numerous by giving them children.

# Kill the Baby Boys 09-04

**Pharaoh saw** that the **Israelites** were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.

## Translation Notes:

* **saw** – Another way to say this would be, “realized” or, “knew.”

# The Birth of Moses 09-05

A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. She and her husband hid the baby for **as long as they could**.

## Translation Notes:

* **as long as they could** - They hid the baby from the Egyptians until it became too difficult to keep him safely hidden in their home.

# Moses in a Basket 09-06

When the boy’s parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a **floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the Nile River** in order to save him from being killed. His older sister watched to see what would happen to him.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Pharaoh’s Daughter 09-07

A daughter of **Pharaoh** saw the basket and looked inside. When she saw the baby, she **took him as her own son**. She hired an **Israelite** woman **to nurse him** without realizing the woman was the baby’s own mother. When the child was old enough that he no longer needed his mother’s milk, she returned him to Pharaoh’s daughter, who named him **Moses**.

## Translation Notes:

* **took him as her own son** - She was a princess. When she made him her son, he became a prince of Egypt.
* **to nurse him** - Another way to say this would be, “to breastfeed him.”

# An Egyptian Beat a Slave 09-08

One day, when **Moses** had **grown up**, he saw an **Egyptian** beating an **Israelite** **slave**. Moses tried to **save** his **fellow Israelite**.

## Translation Notes:

* **grown up** - Another way to say this would be, “grown into a man.” - **fellow Israelite** - This phrase refers to the Israelite slave. The word “fellow” here indicates that Moses was also an Israelite. Although the daughter of the Egyptian Pharaoh raised Moses, Moses remembered that he was really an Israelite.

# Moses Killed an Egyptian 09-09

When **Moses** thought nobody would see, he killed the **Egyptian** and buried his body. But someone saw what Moses had done.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Moses Fled from Egypt 09-10

When **Pharaoh** heard what **Moses** had done, he tried to kill him. Moses ran away from **Egypt** to the **wilderness** where he would be safe from Pharaoh’s soldiers.

## Translation Notes:

* **wilderness** - The wilderness was a large area that was rocky and dry. The land there was not good for growing food and few people lived there.

# Moses in the Wilderness 09-11

**Moses** became a **shepherd** in the **wilderness** far away from **Egypt**. He married a woman from that place and had two sons.

## Translation Notes:

* **wilderness** - See how you translated this in

# The Burning Bush 09-12

One day while **Moses** was **taking care of his sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire. But the **bush did not burn up**. Moses went towards the bush to be able to see it better. As he approached the burning bush, **the voice of God said**, “Moses, **take off your shoes**. You are standing on **holy ground**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **taking care of his sheep** - This means he was doing the work of a shepherd to guide the sheep to grass and water, and to protect them. It could be translated as, “tending the sheep.”
* **bush did not burn up** - God made the bush full of fire, but the fire did not damage the bush.
* **the voice of God said** - This could be translated as, “God said out loud.” Moses heard God speak, but he did not see God.
* **take off your shoes** - God wanted him to take off his shoes to show that he greatly respected God. To make clear the reason for this, you could say, “take off your shoes, because you are on holy ground.”
* **holy ground** - It was holy in the sense that God set it apart from the ordinary land and made it to be a special place where He would reveal Himself.

# God Sent Moses to Egypt 09-13

**God** said, “I have seen the **suffering of my people**. I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can **bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt**. I will give them the land of **Canaan**, the land I **promised** to **Abraham**, **Isaac**, and **Jacob**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **suffering of my people** - This could be translated as, “the very harsh treatment that my people are experiencing. Some languages might translate this as, “how the Egyptians are giving my people terrible pain.”
* **my people** - This refers to the Israelites. God had made a covenant with Abraham and his descendants that He would bless them and make them into a great nation. Through this covenant, the Israelites became God’s own people.
* **bring … out of their slavery in Egypt** - This can be translated as, “set them free from being slaves in Egypt” or, “bring them out of Egypt where they are now slaves.”

# The Name of God 09-14

**Moses** asked, “What if **the people** want to know who sent me, what should I say?” **God** said, “**I AM WHO I AM**. Tell them, ‘**I AM** has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors **Abraham**, **Isaac**, and **Jacob**.’ This is **my name** forever.”

## Translation Notes:

* **the people** - See “my people” in - **I AM WHO I AM** - This description shows that God can only be defined by himself, not by anything else that we know of, and he cannot be compared to anyone else.
* **I AM** - This name emphasizes that God is the only one who has always lived and always will live.
* **my name** - The name that God told Moses and all of Israel to use for him is “Yahweh,” which is related to “I AM” and appears to mean, “HE IS.”

# Aaron Helped Moses 09-15

**Moses was afraid and did not want to go** to **Pharaoh** because he thought he could not speak well, so **God** sent **Moses’ brother, Aaron**, to help him. God warned Moses and Aaron that Pharaoh would be **stubborn**.

*A Bible story from: Exodus 1-4*

## Translation Notes:

* **was afraid and did not want to go** - Moses knew that Pharaoh wanted to kill him, and he did not believe that he could do what God wanted him to do.
* **Moses’ brother, Aaron** - Aaron was Moses’s actual brother from his Israelite mother and father. Aaron would have been at least several years older than Moses.
* **stubborn** - This means the Pharaoh would refuse to obey God. You may also want to add, “stubborn and refuse to listen .”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Let My People Go! 10-01

**Moses** and **Aaron** went **to Pharaoh**. They said, “This is what the **God of Israel** says, ‘**Let my people go**!’” Pharaoh did not **listen to** them. Instead of letting the **Israelites** go free, he forced them to work even harder!

## Translation Notes:

* **to Pharaoh** – It may be clearer to say, “to Pharaoh’s palace to talk to him.”
* **God of Israel** - This could be translated as, “God, who chose the Israelites to be his people” or, “God, who rules the people of Israel” or, “the God whom the Israelites worship.”
* **Let My people go** – Another way to say this would be, “Allow My people to go free” or, “Free My people to leave Egypt.”
* **my people** - See “my people” in - **listen to** – This could be translated as “heed” or, “obey.”

# Pharaoh Refused to Obey 10-02

**Pharaoh** kept refusing to let **the people** go, so **God** sent **ten terrible plagues** on **Egypt**. Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and **all of Egypt’s gods**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the people** - This refers to the people of Israel, also called, “the Israelites.”
* **ten terrible plagues** - A plague is something very bad or terrible that happens to someone or something. A plague usually refers to something that affects many people or happens over a large geographic area. Another word for “plague” would be “disaster.”
* **all of Egypt’s gods** - It may be more clear to say, “all the gods that the Egyptian people worshiped.” The people of Egypt worshiped many different false gods. These false gods were either spirit beings that the God of Israel created, or they did not actually exist.

# The Water Became Blood 10-03

**God turned the Nile River into blood**, but **Pharaoh** still would not let the **Israelites** go.

## Translation Notes:

* **turned the Nile River into blood** - Some languages may need to say, “turned the water in the Nile River into blood.” Instead of water in the river there was blood, so the fish died and the people had no water to drink.

# The Frogs 10-04

**God sent frogs all over Egypt**. **Pharaoh** **begged** **Moses** to take away the frogs. But after all the frogs died, Pharaoh **hardened his heart** and would not let the **Israelites** leave Egypt.

## Translation Notes:

* **God sent frogs all over Egypt** - This could be translated as, “God caused many frogs to appear throughout Egypt.”
* **hardened his heart** - He became stubborn again and refused to obey God.

# The Gnats and the Flies 10-05

So **God sent a plague** of **gnats**. Then he sent a plague of **flies**. **Pharaoh** called **Moses** and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the **Israelites** could leave Egypt. When Moses prayed, God removed all the flies from **Egypt**. But Pharaoh **hardened his heart** and would not let the people go free.

## Translation Notes:

* **God sent a plague** – This could be translated as, “God caused there to be a plague” or, “God caused a plague to come over the land of Egypt.”
* **gnats** - These were tiny, biting insects flying in large swarms, annoying and landing on all the people and animals of Egypt.
* **flies** - These were much bigger flying insects that were both annoying and destructive. There were so many of these flies that they covered everything, even filling the Egyptians’ houses.
* **hardened his heart** - See note in

# The Animals Died 10-06

Next, **God** caused all the farm animals that belonged to the **Egyptians** to get sick and die. But **Pharaoh’s heart was hardened**, and he would not let the **Israelites** go.

## Translation Notes:

* **farm animals** - This refers to large animals that the Egyptians used to help them in their work, such as horses, donkeys, camels, cattle, sheep, and goats.
* **heart was hardened** - See note in

# The Painful Sores 10-07

Then **God** told **Moses** to throw ashes into the air in front of **Pharaoh**. When he did, painful skin sores appeared on the **Egyptians**, but not on the **Israelites**. **God hardened Pharaoh’s heart**, and Pharaoh would not let the Israelites go free.

## Translation Notes:

* **God hardened Pharaoh’s heart** - God caused Pharaoh to continue to be stubborn. See also note in

# The Hail 10-08

**After that**, **God sent hail** that destroyed most of the crops in **Egypt** and killed anybody who went outside. **Pharaoh** called **Moses** and **Aaron** and told them, “I have **sinned**. **You may go**.” So Moses **prayed**, and the hail stopped falling from the sky.

## Translation Notes:

* **After that** - This means, after God caused the painful sores to appear on the Egyptians’ skin.
* **God sent hail** - God caused hail to fall from the sky. - **hail** - Hail is like chunks of ice that fall down from the clouds as rain does. These chunks can be very small or very large. The larger ones will hurt or kill whatever they fall on.
* **You may go** - The word “you” refers to Moses, Aaron, and the Israelites.

# Pharaoh’s Hard Heart 10-09

But **Pharaoh** **sinned** again and **hardened his heart**. He would not let the **Israelites** go free.

## Translation Notes:

* **hardened his heart** - See note in

# The Locusts 10-10

So **God** caused **swarms of locusts** to come over **Egypt**. These **locusts** ate all the crops that the **hail** had not destroyed.

## Translation Notes:

* **swarms of locusts** - Locusts are grasshoppers that fly together in swarms, or large groups, and that can destroy large areas of all kinds of plants and food crops by eating them.
* **hail** - Hail is like chunks of ice that fall down from the clouds as rain does.

# The Darkness 10-11

Then **God sent darkness that lasted for three days**. It was so dark that the **Egyptians** could not leave their houses. But there was light where the **Israelites** lived.

## Translation Notes:

* **God sent darkness** - God caused darkness to cover or spread over most of Egypt. In other words, God took away the light from this part of Egypt.
* **darkness that lasted for three days** - This darkness was darker than ordinary nighttime darkness, and it continued to be totally dark for three whole days.

# Pharaoh Refused to Listen 10-12

Even after **these nine plagues**, **Pharaoh** still refused to let the **Israelites** go free. **Since Pharaoh would not listen**, **God** planned to send one last plague. **This would change Pharaoh’s mind**.

*A Bible story from: Exodus 5-10*

## Translation Notes:

* **these nine plagues** - This means, “these nine disasters that God had caused.”
* **Since Pharaoh would not listen** - This could be translated as, “Since Pharaoh would not do what God was telling him to do” or, “Since Pharaoh refused to obey God.”
* **This would change Pharaoh’s mind** - Another way to say this would be, “This last plague would cause Pharaoh to change how he thought about God and as a result he would let the Israelites go free.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Firstborn Males Would Die 11-01

**God** warned **Pharaoh** that if he did not let the **Israelites** go, then he would kill all the **firstborn males of both people and animals**. When Pharaoh heard this he still refused to **believe** and **obey** God.

## Translation Notes:

* **the firstborn males of both people and animals** - This could be translated as, “the eldest son in every family and the first male offspring of any of their animals.”

# The Sacrifice 11-02

**God provided** a way to **save** the firstborn **son** of anyone who **believed** in him. Each family had to choose a **perfect lamb** and kill it.

## Translation Notes:

* **God provided** – God is the only one who could provide the way to save the Israelites’ sons from death.
* **perfect lamb** - That is, “a young sheep or goat that had no blemishes or defects.”

# Blood on the Door 11-03

**God** told the **Israelites** to put some of the **lamb’s** **blood** around the door of their house, and to roast the meat and eat it quickly, along with bread that was **made without yeast**. He also told them to be ready to leave **Egypt** **when they ate**.

## Translation Notes:

* **made without yeast** – Yeast is something that is mixed into bread dough to make bread rise as it cooks. This could be translated as, “made without something that would make it rise.” Making the bread with yeast would have taken much longer, so cooking the bread without yeast was a way to be prepared to leave Egypt quickly.
* **when they ate** – This means they needed to be prepared to leave before they started to eat.

# The Passover Meal 11-04

The **Israelites** did everything just as **God** had commanded them to do. In the middle of the night, God went throughout **Egypt** killing **every firstborn son**.

## Translation Notes:

* **every firstborn son** - This means every firstborn son of families who had not made the blood sacrifice, that is, the Egyptians. To make this clear you may want to add, “Every Egyptian firstborn son” (since all the Israelite families had put the blood on their doorposts).

# Saved by the Blood 11-05

All the houses of the **Israelites** had **blood** around the doors, so **God** **passed over** those houses. Everybody inside them was safe. **They were saved because of the lamb’s blood**.

## Translation Notes:

* **passed over** - This means that God passed by those houses and did not stop to kill anyone there. This phrase became the name of the Jewish festival, “Passover.”
* **They were saved** - God did not kill their firstborn son. - **because of the lamb’s blood** - This could be translated as, “because the lamb’s blood was on their door.” God saw that they had killed their lamb as he had commanded, so he did not kill their son.

# Death of the Firstborn 11-06

But the **Egyptians** **did not believe God or obey his commands**. So God **did not pass over** their houses. God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn sons.

## Translation Notes:

* **did not believe God or obey his commands** – In some languages it may be more natural or clear to say, “did not believe God and so they did not obey his commands.”
* **did not pass over** - He did not pass by their houses. Rather he stopped at each house and killed their eldest son.

# Sorrow in Egypt 11-07

Every **Egyptian** firstborn male died, **from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail, to the firstborn of Pharaoh**. Many people in **Egypt** were crying and wailing because of their deep sadness.

## Translation Notes:

* **from the firstborn of the prisoner in jail, to the firstborn of Pharaoh** - This is a way of saying that everyone’s firstborn son died–from the son of the least important person to the son of the most important person, and everyone in between.

# Go Away! 11-08

That same night, **Pharaoh called for Moses** and **Aaron and said**, “Take the **Israelites** and leave **Egypt** immediately!” The **Egyptian** people also urged the Israelites to leave immediately.

*A Bible story from: Exodus 11:1-12:32*

## Translation Notes:

* **called for** – This means that Pharaoh told his servants to tell Moses and Aaron to come to him.
* **and said** – Pharaoh said the following words to Moses and Aaron after they came to him. In some languages this would be translated as, “and said to them,” or, “After they came, Pharaoh said to them.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Israel Left Egypt 12-01

The **Israelites** were very happy to leave **Egypt**. **They were no longer slaves**, and they were **going** to the **Promised Land**! The **Egyptians** gave the Israelites whatever they asked for, even gold and silver and other valuable things. Some people from other nations **believed** in **God** and went along with the Israelites as they left Egypt.

## Translation Notes:

* **They were no longer slaves** - This could be translated as, “They were not slaves anymore.”
* **going** – Some languages may use a more specific word like “traveling” since they would be going a long distance to the Promised Land.
* **Promised Land** - This is the land that God had promised that he would give to Abraham’s descendants.

# God Went before Israel 12-02

**God** led them with a **tall pillar of cloud** that went ahead of them during the day, and which became a **tall pillar of fire** at night. God was always with them and **guided them** as they traveled. All they had to do was follow him.

## Translation Notes:

* **tall pillar of cloud** - This could be translated as, “a tall cloud” or, “a cloud shaped like a pillar.”
* **tall pillar of fire** - This was a column of fire that hung or floated in the air in front of the Israelites.
* **guided them** - God showed them the way by making the pillar move along in front of them so they could follow it.

# Pharaoh Changed His Mind 12-03

**After a short time**, **Pharaoh** and his people **changed their minds** and wanted the **Israelites** to be their **slaves** again. **God** caused Pharaoh to be stubborn so that people would see he is the One True God, and understand that he, Yahweh, is more powerful than Pharaoh and his **gods**.

## Translation Notes:

* **After a short time** – Probably at least two days had gone by. For that to be clear, it may be translated as, “After a few days” or, “A few days after the Israelites left Egypt.”
* **changed their minds** - This phrase means, “began to think differently than they had before.” Some languages may not have this same expression, and will express the meaning in a direct way.

# Pharaoh Chased Israel 12-04

So **Pharaoh** and his army chased after the **Israelites** to **make them their slaves again**. When the Israelites saw the **Egyptian** army coming, they realized **they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the Red Sea**. They were very afraid and cried out, “**Why did we leave Egypt**? We are going to die!”

## Translation Notes:

* **they were trapped between…Red Sea** - Another way to say this would be, “there was nowhere they could go to escape since the Egyptians were behind them and the Red Sea was in front of them.”
* **Why did we leave Egypt?** – This means, “We should not have left Egypt!” They were not really asking for reasons. Because they were afraid, in this moment they were wishing they had not left Egypt .

# God Will Fight for You 12-05

**Moses** told the **Israelites**, “**Stop being afraid**! **God will fight for you today and save you**.” Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to **move** toward the **Red Sea**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **God will fight for you today and save you** - Another way to say this would be, “Today God will defeat the Egyptians for you and keep them from harming you.”
* **move** – Some languages will be more specific and say, “walk.”

# Darkness over the Egyptians 12-06

Then **God** moved the **pillar of cloud** and placed it between the **Israelites** and the **Egyptians** so the Egyptians **could not see** the Israelites.

## Translation Notes:

* **pillar of cloud** – See how you translated this phrase in - **could not see** - The cloud pillar was so large and thick that the Egyptians could no longer see any of the Israelites.

# Moses Divided the Sea 12-07

**God** told **Moses** to **raise his hand over the sea** and divide the waters. Then God caused wind to push the water in the sea to the left and the right, so that a path formed through the sea.

## Translation Notes:

* **raise his hand over the sea** - This could be translated as, “held out his hand over the sea”. This was a gesture to show that God was doing this miracle through Moses.

# Israel Crossed the Sea 12-08

The **Israelites** **marched** through the sea on dry ground **with a wall of water on either side of them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **marched** - This can be translated as, “walked” or, “went.”
* **with a wall of water on either side of them** - This could be translated as, “and the water on both sides of them stood up tall and straight like a wall.”

# Egypt Pursued Israel 12-09

Then **God** moved the cloud up and out of the way so that the **Egyptians** could see the **Israelites** escaping. The Egyptians decided to chase after them.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# God Fought for Israel 12-10

So they followed the **Israelites** onto the **path through the sea**, but **God** caused the **Egyptians** **to panic** and caused their **chariots** to **get stuck**. They shouted, “Run away! God is fighting for the Israelites!”

## Translation Notes:

* **path through the sea** - This was the dry strip of land across the bottom of the sea, with a wall of water on each side.
* **to panic** – This could be translated as, “to get fearful and confused.”
* **get stuck** - The chariots could no longer move.

# The Egyptians Drowned 12-11

After the **Israelites** all **made it safely to the other side** of the sea, **God** told **Moses** to **stretch out his arm again**. When he obeyed, the **water fell on the Egyptian army** and **returned to its normal place**. **The whole Egyptian army** drowned.

## Translation Notes:

* **made it safely to the other side** – This could be translated as, “walked safely to the other side” or, “arrived safely on the other side” or, “walked to the other side and were safe from the Egyptians and the sea.”
* **stretch out his arm again** - This could be translated as, “lift his arm over the sea again” or, as a direct command, as in, “God told Moses, ‘Stretch out your arm again.’”
* **returned to its normal place** - This could be translated as, “covered the place again where the path had been,” or “filled the whole sea again” or, “went back to where it was before God separated it.”
* **The whole Egyptian army** - This could be translated as, “everyone in Egypt’s army.”

# Israel Believed God 12-12

When the **Israelites** saw that the **Egyptians** were dead, they **trusted in God** and **believed** that **Moses** was **a prophet of God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **trusted in God** - In other words, the people now trusted that God was powerful and could protect them.

# Israel Rejoiced 12-13

The **Israelites** also **rejoiced with much excitement** because **God** had **saved** them **from death and slavery**! Now they were **free to serve** God. The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise God** because he saved them from the **Egyptian** army.

## Translation Notes:

* **rejoiced with much excitement** - This could be translated as, “were very happy and they showed it enthusiastically” or, “showed it with their whole hearts” or, “with all their strength.”
* **from death and slavery** - This could be translated as, “from being killed or made slaves by the Egyptians.”
* **free to serve** - God freed, or rescued, the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt so that they could serve him.
* **praise God** - In some languages this could be translated as, “lift up God’s name” or, “say that God is great.”

# An Annual Feast 12-14

**God** commanded the **Israelites** to celebrate **the Passover** every year in order to **remember how God gave them victory over** the **Egyptians** and rescued them from being **slaves**. They celebrated by killing a **perfect lamb**, eating it with **unleavened bread**.

*A Bible story from: Exodus 12:33-15:21*

## Translation Notes:

* **the Passover** - This could be translated as, “the Passover activities” or, “the Passover celebration” or, “the Passover meal.”
* **remember how God gave them victory over** – This could be translated as, “regularly remind themselves of how God defeated.” The word “remember” here doesn’t just mean to not forget; it also means to formally commemorate something.
* **perfect lamb** - The word “perfect” here refers to a lamb with no disease or anything else wrong with it. Another way to say this might be, “a completely healthy and well-formed lamb.”
* **unleavened bread** - This is another way to say, “bread that was made without yeast.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Mountain at Sinai 13-01

After **God** led the **Israelites** through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**. This was the same mountain where **Moses** had seen the **burning bush**. The people **set up their tents** at the **base of the mountain**.

## Translation Notes:

* **burning bush** - Before Moses returned to Egypt, God had spoken to him from a shrub that was on fire, but that was not burned up by the fire. See
* **set up their tents** - The Israelites had to travel a great distance from Egypt to the Promised Land. So they took tents with them so that they could set them up as shelters and sleep in them along the way. Some languages could translate this as, “hung their tents.”
* **base of the mountain** – This could be translated as, “bottom of the mountain.” This refers to the area of land that is located next to the place where the ground starts to slant upward to form a mountain.

# God Called Israel 13-02

**God** said to **Moses** and the people of **Israel**, “If you will **obey** me and **keep my covenant**, **you will be my prized possession**, a **kingdom of priests**, and a **holy nation**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **keep my covenant** - This could be translated as, “do what my covenant requires you to do.” Obeying and keeping the covenant are not two different things. One way to make this clear would be to say, “obey me by keeping my covenant.” God will soon tell them what his covenant requires.
* **my prized possession** - This could be translated as, “You will be my possession that I value most” or, “You will be the people that I treasure more than any other group of people” or, “You will be my own precious people.”
* **You will be…a kingdom of priests** - This could be translated as, “I will be your king and you will be like priests.” The Israelites were supposed to teach the other nations about God and be a mediator between God and the nations just as there were priests in the nation of Israel to go between God and the Israelites.

# Moses Met God 13-03

**Three days later**, after the people had **prepared themselves spiritually**, **God** came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a **loud trumpet blast**. **Only Moses was allowed to go up** the mountain.

## Translation Notes:

* **Three days later** - In other words, three days after they arrived at Mount Sinai and God first spoke to them.
* **prepared themselves spiritually** - This refers to ceremonial cleansing in preparation to meet with God. This could be translated as, “got ready to meet with God” or, “prepared themselves to meet with God.”
* **loud trumpet blast** - This could be translated as, “and a loud sound came from a horn”, or “and a horn was blown and it made a loud sound” or, “and they heard the loud sound of a horn blowing.” Trumpets were made out of ram’s horns. They were used that day to call the people to gather at the mountain and meet with God.
* **Only Moses was allowed to go up** - This could be translated as, “God permitted Moses to go up, but he did not permit anyone else to go up.”

# I Am Your God 13-04

**Then God gave them the covenant and said**, “I am **Yahweh, your God**, **who saved you from slavery** in **Egypt**. Do not **worship** other **gods**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Then God gave them the covenant and said** - What God says next is the content of the covenant, that is, he tells the people the things that they must obey. This could be translated as, “Then God told them His covenant. He said” or, “Then God made this covenant with them:”
* **Yahweh your God** - In some languages it might be more natural to change the order and say “your God Yahweh.” Make sure it does not sound like the Israelites had more than one God. It should be clear that Yahweh is the only God. Another way to translate this would be, “Yahweh, who is your God” or, “your God, whose name is Yahweh.”
* **who saved you from slavery** - This could be translated as, “I freed you from slavery.”

# The Commandments 13-05

“Do not make **idols** and do not **worship** them, because **I, Yahweh, am a jealous God**. **Do not use my name in a disrespectful way**. Be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** **holy**. That is, do all your work in six days, for the **seventh day** is a day for you to rest and **to remember me**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **I, Yahweh, am a jealous God** - This could be translated as, “I, Yahweh, will be angry if you worship or honor anything besides me.” God strongly desires that his people love, serve, and obey Him more than anything or anyone else. He must be the only master of their lives.
* **Do not use my name in a disrespectful way** - This could be translated as, “Do not talk about me in a way that does not show respect and honor” or, “Talk about me in a way that gives me proper respect and honor.”
* **seventh day** - To translate this, it is best to use the number rather than give the name of a specific day of the week.
* **to remember me** - This could be translated as, “to keep me in mind” or, “to honor me.”

# More Commandments 13-06

“**Honor** your father and your mother. Do not murder. **Do not commit adultery**. **Do not steal**. **Do not lie**. Do not desire to have your neighbor’s wife, his house, or anything that belongs to him.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **Do not commit adultery** - This could be translated as, “Do not have sexual relations with someone else’s spouse” or, “Do not have marital relations with another man’s wife or another woman’s husband.” Be sure to translate this in a way that doesn’t offend or embarrass people. Languages often have an indirect, polite way of saying this, such as, “Do not sleep with.”
* **Do not lie** - This means, “Do not say false things about other people.”

# The Stone Tablets 13-07

Then **God** wrote **these Ten Commandments** on two **stone tablets** and gave them to **Moses**. **God also gave** many other laws and rules **to follow**. If the people **obeyed** these **laws**, God **promised** that he would **bless** and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would **punish them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **these Ten Commandments** - This refers to the commands God gave to Moses for the Israelites to obey. They are listed in frames and
* **stone tablets** - These were flat pieces of stone. - **God also gave** - This can be translated as, “God also told them.” - **to follow** - This can be translated as, “that they must obey” or, “that they must keep.”

# The Tent of Meeting 13-08

**God** also gave the **Israelites a detailed description** of a tent he wanted them to make. **It was called** the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. Only the **high priest** was allowed to go into **the room behind the curtain**, because **God lived there**.

## Translation Notes:

* **a detailed description** - This could be translated as, “God described it in detail” or, “God told them exactly how He wanted them to make it.”
* **It was called** - This could be translated as, “They called it” or, “Moses called it.”
* **the room behind the curtain** - This room was hidden by the curtain. Some languages would call this room, “the room in front of the curtain.”
* **God lived there** - If this phrase would lead people to think that God was limited to living in the tent, here are some ways of translating it: “God was there” or, “God revealed Himself to humans there.”

# The Altar 13-09

Anyone who **disobeyed** **God’s law** could bring an animal **to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting** as a **sacrifice** to **God**. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**. **The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin** and made that person **clean in God’s sight**. God chose **Moses’** brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron’s **descendants** to be his priests.

## Translation Notes:

* **God’s law** - This refers to all the commandments and instructions that God had told the Israelites to obey.
* **to the Tent of Meeting** - They did not bring the animal inside the Tent of Meeting, but to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting. Be sure not to use an expression that means that they brought it inside.
* **covered the person’s sin** - When people brought animals to sacrifice, God chose to see the blood of the animals as a covering over their sin. This is like hiding something that is ugly or dirty by covering it.
* **clean in God’s sight** - This could be translated as, “as if he did not have the sin according to God” or, “free of the punishment for breaking God’s law.”

# The People Sinned 13-10

The people all agreed to **obey** the laws that **God** had **given them**, to **worship** only God, and to be **his special people**. But a short time after they **promised** to obey God, they **sinned terribly**.

## Translation Notes:

* **given them** - This could be translated as, “told them to obey.”
* **his special people** - From among all the nations, God had chosen the Israelites for his special purpose. This could be translated as “his special nation” or, “his own people” or, “the nation he chose to be his people.”
* **a short time** – The people sinned during the forty days that Moses was on the mountain with God.
* **sinned terribly** - They sinned in a way that was especially offensive to God. This could be translated as, “they sinned badly,” or “they did something that was very bad” or, “they did something bad that made God very angry.”

# Make Us an Idol for Us 13-11

For many days, **Moses** was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with **God**. **The people became tired of waiting** for him to return. So they **brought gold** to **Aaron** and asked him to make an **idol** for them!

## Translation Notes:

* **The people became tired of waiting** - This could be translated as, “The people became impatient because he did not return quickly” or, “The people didn’t want to wait any longer for him to return.”
* **brought gold** - These were objects and jewelry made of gold, which could be melted and formed into other things.

# The Golden Calf 13-12

**Aaron made a golden idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to **wildly worship** the idol and make **sacrifices** to it! **God** was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them. But **Moses** **prayed** for them, and God **listened to his prayer** and did not destroy them.

## Translation Notes:

* **made a golden idol** - Aaron took the things made of gold that the people had brought to him, melted them, combined them, and formed them into the shape of a calf.
* **wildly worship** - The people were sinning by worshiping the idol and also by doing sinful things as they worshiped it.
* **listened to his prayer** - God always hears prayer. In this situation, “listened” means that God agreed to do what Moses asked.

# Moses Was Angry 13-13

When **Moses** came down the mountain and saw the **idol**, he was so angry that he **smashed the stones** on which **God** had written the **Ten Commandments**.

## Translation Notes:

* **smashed the stones** - He threw the stones down on the ground and they broke up into little pieces.

# Moses Destroyed the Idol 13-14

Then **Moses beat the idol into powder**, threw the powder into some water and made the people drink the water. **God** sent **a plague** on the people and many of them died.

## Translation Notes:

* **beat the idol into powder** - Moses utterly destroyed the idol by pounding it into fine particles.
* **into some water** - Moses scattered the gold powder over a large expanse of water.
* **a plague** - This could be translated as, “a terrible disease.”

# Moses Prayed for Israel 13-15

**Moses** climbed the mountain again and **prayed** that **God** would **forgive** the people. God **listened to** Moses and forgave them. **Moses wrote** the **Ten Commandments** on new stone tablets to replace the ones he had broken. Then God led the **Israelites** away from **Mount Sinai** toward the **Promised Land**.

*A Bible story from: Exodus 19-34*

## Translation Notes:

* **listened to** - See how you translated this phrase in - **Moses wrote** - Moses chiseled the words into the stone using a tool.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# God Led Israel 14-01

After **God** had told the **Israelites** the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his **covenant** with them, they left **Mount Sinai**. God began leading them from toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called **Canaan**. The **pillar of cloud** went ahead of them towards Canaan and they followed it.

## Translation Notes:

* **pillar of cloud** - See how you translated this phrase in

# The Canaanites’ Idols 14-02

**God** had **promised** **Abraham**, **Isaac**, and **Jacob** that he would give the **Promised Land** to their **descendants**, but now there were many **people groups** living there. They were called **Canaanites**. The Canaanites did not **worship** or **obey** God. They worshiped **false gods** and did many **evil** things.

## Translation Notes:

\*\*

# Destroy the Canaanites 14-03

**God** told the **Israelites**, “You must **get rid of** all the **Canaanites** in the **Promised Land**. **Do not make peace with them** and **do not marry them**. You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not **obey** me, **you will worship their idols** instead of me.”

## Translation Notes:

* **get rid of** - This could be translated as, “get them out of the land” or, “remove them from the land.”
* **Do not make peace with them** - This could be translated as, “Do not live peacefully among or alongside them” or, “Do not promise to live peacefully with them.”
* **do not marry them** - God did not want any Israelite person to marry any Canaanite person.
* **you will worship their idols** - If the Israelites became friends with the Canaanites and did not destroy the idols, they would be tempted to worship those idols instead of God. You could say, “you will end up worshiping” to make it clear that this would result from living so close to the Canaanites and learning their ways.

# The Twelve Spies 14-04

When the **Israelites** reached the border of **Canaan**, **Moses** chose twelve men, one from each tribe of **Israel**. He gave the men instructions to go and **spy on the land** to see what it was like. They were also to **spy on the Canaanites to see if they were strong or weak**.

## Translation Notes:

* **spy on the land** - This could be translated as, “secretly get information about the land” or, “secretly learn about the land.” Part of the spies’ task was to find out what kinds of food the land could produce.
* **spy on the Canaanites** - This could be translated as, “secretly get information about the people of Canaan” or, “secretly learn about the Canaanites.”
* **to see if they were strong or weak** - They wanted to know if the Canaanites were prepared to fight against them. This could be translated as, “to find out how powerful the Canaanite armies were.”

# The Bad Report 14-05

The twelve men traveled through **Canaan** for forty days and then **they came back**. They told the people, “The land is very fertile and the crops are plentiful!” But ten of the spies said, “**The cities are very strong** and **the people are giants**! If we attack them, they will certainly defeat us and kill us!”

## Translation Notes:

* **they came back** - They returned to where the rest of the Israelites were waiting, just outside the border of Canaan.
* **The cities are very strong** - The cities had strong walls around them, so it would be very difficult for the Israelites to attack them.
* **the people are giants** – This could be translated as, “the people are like giants compared to us!” or, “the people are much taller and stronger than we are!”

# Joshua and Caleb 14-06

Immediately **Caleb** and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the **people of Canaan** are tall and strong, but **we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **people of Canaan** – This could be translated as, “the people who live in Canaan” or, “the Canaanites.”
* **we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us** – To show the connection between these two statements, it may be necessary to say, “we can certainly defeat them because God will fight for us!”
* **God will fight for us** – This could be translated as, “God will fight alongside us and help us defeat them!” This makes it clear that the Israelites would also be fighting against the Canaanites.

# The People Rebelled 14-07

But the people did not listen to **Caleb** and **Joshua**. They became angry with **Moses** and **Aaron** and said, “**Why did you bring us** to **this horrible place**? We should have stayed in **Egypt rather than be killed in battle and our wives and children made slaves**.” The people wanted to choose a different leader to take them back to Egypt.

## Translation Notes:

* **Why did you bring us** – This is not a real question. It is a way that some languages use to say, “You should not have brought us.”
* **this horrible place** - They considered Canaan to be “horrible” because they thought it was so dangerous that they would all be killed.
* **rather than be killed in battle and our wives and children made slaves** - This could be translated as, “If we fight against the Canaanites, they will kill us men and force our wives and children to be their slaves.”

# God Spoke 14-08

**God was very angry** and **came to** the **Tent of Meeting**. **God** said, “Because you have rebelled against me, all of the people will have to **wander in the wilderness**. Except for **Joshua** and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years or older will die there and never enter the **Promised Land**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **came to** - God did not appear as a person, but came in some other form that showed his glory and power.
* **wander in the wilderness** - God would lead the people around in the wilderness with no specific destination until all of the adults who rebelled against him died.

# The People Ignored God 14-09

When the people heard this, they were sorry **they had sinned**. They took their weapons and went to attack the people of **Canaan**. **Moses warned them not to go** because **God was not with them**, **but they did not listen to him**.

## Translation Notes:

* **they had sinned** - It may be necessary to add, “they had sinned by disobeying God’s command to conquer the peoples of Canaan.”
* **Moses warned them not to go** - This means that Moses told them not to go to fight against the Canaanites because they would be in danger if they did that.
* **God was not with them** – In other words, God would not be with them to help them. Because of the Israelites’ disobedience, God withdrew from them his presence, protection, and power.
* **but they did not listen to him** - They did not obey Moses. They went to attack the Canaanites anyway.

# The Canaanites Defeated Israel 14-10

**God did not go with them into this battle**, so they were defeated and many of them were killed. Then the **Israelites turned back from Canaan** and **wandered through the wilderness** for forty years.

## Translation Notes:

* **God did not go with them into this battle** - In other words, God did not help them in this fight.
* **turned back from Canaan** - They left Canaan and went back into the wilderness where they were before.
* **wandered through the wilderness** - They lived in the wilderness, and together they moved from place to place in that large, dry land, looking for food and water for themselves and their animals.

# Manna from Heaven 14-11

During the forty years that the people of **Israel** wandered in the wilderness, **God provided for them**. He gave them **bread from heaven, called “manna.” He also sent flocks of quail** **into their camp** so they could have meat to eat. During all that time, God kept their clothes and shoes from wearing out.

## Translation Notes:

* **God provided for them** – This could be translated as, “God gave them everything they needed for food, water, and shelter.”
* **bread from heaven, called “manna”** - This thin, bread-like food fell from the sky overnight onto the grass like dew. They called it “manna.” Almost every day the people gathered this “manna” and cooked it as their food.
* **He also sent flocks of quail…camp** - Another way to say this would be, “He also caused a large number of quails to fly into their camp.” If quails are unknown, a different, similar type bird could be used. Or it could be translated as, “a large number of medium-sized birds.”
* **their camp** - The place where the Israelites set up their tents to sleep in was called a “camp.” It was like a city with tents instead of buildings, and it could be moved around.

# Water from a Rock 14-12

**God** even **miraculously gave them water from a rock**. **But despite all this**, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against **Moses**. **Even so, God was still faithful to his promises** to **Abraham**, **Isaac**, and **Jacob**.

## Translation Notes:

* **miraculously gave them water from a rock** - This could be translated, “by doing something that only God can do, he made water pour out of a rock so the people and animals could drink.”
* **But despite all this** - This could be translated as, “But even though God provided food, water, clothing, and everything that they needed.”
* **Even so** - This could be translated, “Even though the Israelites complained and grumbled against him.”
* **God was still faithful to his promises** - This could be translated, “God continued to do what he had told Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob he would do.” He provided their descendants with what they needed so they that could live and become a great nation and eventually own the land of Canaan.

# Moses Struck the Rock 14-13

Another time when the people did not have any water, **God** told **Moses**, “Speak to the rock, and water will come out of it.” But **Moses dishonored God** in front of all the people **by hitting the rock twice with a stick instead of speaking to it**. Water came out of the rock for everyone to drink, but God was angry with Moses and said, “You will not enter the **Promised Land**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Moses dishonored God** - This could be translated, “Moses disobeyed God” or, “Moses disrespected God.” God had a specific way He wanted Moses to show the people God’s power to provide for them. When Moses disobeyed God by doing it in a different way he showed a lack of respect for God.
* **by hitting the rock twice with a stick instead of speaking to it**
  + This can be translated as, “Moses did not speak to the rock; he hit it twice with a stick.”

# At the Promised Land 14-14

After the **Israelites** had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them **who had rebelled against God** were dead. Then God led **the people** to the edge of the **Promised Land** again. **Moses** was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people. God also **promised** Moses that **one day**, he would send **another prophet like Moses**.

## Translation Notes:

* **who had rebelled against God** - This could be translated, “who had refused to obey God when he told them to go into the Promised Land.”
* **the people** - That is, the children of the generation that died.
* **one day** - This means, “some time in the future.” - **another prophet like Moses** - Like Moses, this man would be an Israelite, he would speak God’s words to the people, and he would lead the people.

# The Death of Moses 14-15

Then **God** told **Moses** to go to the top of a mountain so he could see the **Promised Land**. Moses saw the Promised Land but God did not permit him to enter it. Then Moses died, and the **Israelites mourned for thirty days**. **Joshua** became their new leader. Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and **obeyed** God.

*A Bible story from: Exodus 16-17; Numbers 10-14; 20; 27; Deuteronomy 34*

## Translation Notes:

* **mourned for thirty days** - For thirty days all the people of Israel cried and showed that they were very sad that Moses had died.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Two Spies 15-01

**At last it was time for** the **Israelites** to **enter Canaan**, the **Promised Land**. **Joshua** sent **two spies to the Canaanite city of Jericho** that was **protected by strong walls**. In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to **escape**. She did this because she **believed** **God**. They **promised** to protect Rahab and **her family** when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.

## Translation Notes:

* **At last it was time for** - “At last” means “finally” or, “after a long wait.” To make it clear what “time” refers to, you could say, “after they had wandered in the desert for 40 years, God finally permitted.”
* **two spies to the Canaanite city of Jericho** - This could be translated as, “two men to Jericho, a city in Canaan, to find out information about it.” Also see the notes for, “spy out the land” in
* **protected by strong walls** - This could be translated as, “completely surrounded by thick, strong walls made of stone to protect it from their enemies.”
* **escape** – It is also possible to add, “escape from people in Jericho who wanted to harm them.”
* **her family** - Rahab asked for protection for her father, mother, brothers, and sisters. Use your word for family that includes these people.

# Crossing the Jordan River 15-02

The **Israelites** had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the **Promised Land**. **God** told **Joshua**, “**Have the priests go first**.” When the priests started to step into the Jordan River, **the water upstream stopped flowing** so the Israelites could cross over to the other side of the river on dry ground.

## Translation Notes:

* **Have the priests go first** – For some languages it may be helpful to add, “Have the priests go before the rest of the people to cross the river.”
* **the water upstream stopped flowing** — In some languages it may be helpful to add, “and the water in front of them flowed away downstream.”

# Marching around Jericho 15-03

**After the people crossed the Jordan River**, **God** told **Joshua how to attack** the powerful city of **Jericho**. The people **obeyed** God. Just as God told them to do, the soldiers and **priests** marched around the city of Jericho **once a day for six days**.

## Translation Notes:

* **After the people crossed the Jordan River** – In some languages it is better to say, “The people crossed the Jordan River and then…”
* **how to attack** – This could be translated as, “exactly what he should do to attack.”
* **once a day for six days** - That is, they went around the city one time every day for a total of six days.

# Shouting to God 15-04

Then on the seventh day, the **Israelites**marched around the city seven more times. **While they marched around the city for the last time**, the soldiers shouted while the **priests blew their trumpets**.

## Translation Notes:

* **While they marched around the city for the last time** - This can be translated as, “During their final circuit around the city.”
* **blew their trumpets** - This could be translated as, “They sounded their trumpets” or, “They played their trumpets.” These trumpets were made out of ram’s horns.

# The Walls Fell Down 15-05

Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The **Israelites** destroyed everything in the city as **God** had commanded. They only spared **Rahab** and her family, who **became part of** the Israelites. When the other people living in **Canaan** heard that the Israelites had destroyed Jericho, they were terrified that the Israelites would attack them also.

## Translation Notes:

* **became part of** - This can be translated as, “who then joined the Israelite community” or, “who then became members of the nation of Israel.”

# The Gibeonites’ Lie 15-06

**God** had commanded the **Israelites** not to make a **peace treaty** with any of the people groups in **Canaan**. **But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the Gibeonites**, **lied to Joshua and said** they were from a place far from Canaan. They asked Joshua to make a peace treaty with them. Joshua and the Israelites did not ask God **where the Gibeonites were from**. So Joshua made a peace treaty with them.

## Translation Notes:

* **peace treaty** – This is an agreement between two groups of people that they will not harm each other but will live in peace and help each other. This could be translated as, “peace agreement.”
* **But one of the Canaanite people groups called the Gibeonites** – Some languages may introduce this as, “But one day a Canaanite people group by the name of the Gibeonites …”
* **lied to Joshua and said** - This could be translated as, “They lied to Joshua by saying” or, “They falsely said to Joshua” or, “They falsely told Joshua.”
* **where the Gibeonites were from** - That is, “where the Gibeonites lived” or, “where the Gibeonites’ home was.” “Gibeonites” means, “people of Gibeon.”

# The Gibeonites in Danger 15-07

The **Israelites** were angry when they found out that the **Gibeonites** had deceived them, but they kept the **peace** treaty they had made with them because it was a **promise** before **God**. Some time later, the **kings** of another people group in **Canaan**, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**. The Gibeonites **sent a message to Joshua asking for help**.

## Translation Notes:

* **sent a message to Joshua asking for help** - This could be translated as, “sent some of their people to tell Joshua that they needed the Israelites to help defend them against their enemies.”

# Israel Helped the Gibeonites 15-08

So **Joshua** gathered the **Israelite** army and they marched all night **to reach the Gibeonites**. In the early morning **they surprised the Amorite armies** and attacked them.

## Translation Notes:

* **to reach the Gibeonites** - That is, “to get to the Gibeonites” or, “to arrive at where the Gibeonites lived.” The Gibeonites lived in Canaan, but Canaan is big enough that it took all night for the Israelite army to travel from their camp to where the Gibeonites were.
* **they surprised the Amorite armies** - The Amorites did not know that the Israelites were coming to attack them.

# God Fought the Amorites 15-09

**God fought for Israel** that day. He **caused the Amorites to be confused** and he sent **large hailstones** that killed many of the Amorites.

## Translation Notes:

* **God fought for Israel** - God fought on the side of Israel against Israel’s enemies.
* **caused the Amorites to be confused** - This could be translated as, “made the Amorites panic” or, “caused the Amorites to be unable to fight together well.”
* **large hailstones** - This could be translated as, “very large balls of ice to come down from the sky.”

# The Sun Stood Still 15-10

**God** also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that **Israel** would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**. On that day, God won a great victory for Israel.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Israel Defeated the Canaanites 15-11

After God defeated those armies, many of the other **Canaanite** people groups gathered together to attack **Israel**. **Joshua** and the Israelites **attacked and destroyed them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **attacked and destroyed them** - This could be translated as, “fought against them and defeated them.”

# Dividing the Promised Land 15-12

After this battle, **God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land**. Then God **gave Israel peace along all its borders**.

## Translation Notes:

* **God gave…Land** – this could be translated as, “God appointed each tribe its own plot of land” or, “God decided which part of the Promised Land each tribe of Israel would live on.”
* **gave Israel peace along all its borders** – This could be translated as, “God allowed the Israelites to experience peace with the other people groups that surrounded them” or, “the other countries around Israel.”

# Joshua Renewed the Covenant 15-13

**When Joshua was an old man**, he called all the people of **Israel** together. Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to **obey** the **covenant** that **God** had made with the **Israelites** at **Sinai**. The people **promised** to **remain faithful to God** and **follow his laws**.

*A Bible story from: Joshua 1-24*

## Translation Notes:

* **When Joshua was an old man** – It may be clearer to say, “Many years later, when Joshua was an old man.” Joshua was over 100 years old at this time.
* **remain faithful to God** - In other words, they would be loyal to God. They would worship and serve only God; they would not worship or serve any other gods.
* **follow his laws** - This means that the people would obey the laws that God had given them already as part of the covenant.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Israel Worshiped Idols 16-01

After **Joshua** died, the **Israelites** **disobeyed** **God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God’s laws**. The Israelites began to **worship** the Canaanite **gods** instead of **Yahweh**, **the true God**. The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did **what they thought was right for them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **and did not drive out** – This tells how they disobeyed God, so in some languages it may be better to start this as a new sentence, “They did not.”
* **drive out the rest of the Canaanites** - This can be translated, “fight with the rest of the Canaanites to force them to leave the land.”
* **or obey God’s laws** - This means that the people also disobeyed the laws that God gave to the Israelites at Mount Sinai.
* **the true God** - That is, “the only real God.” Yahweh is the only one that people should worship.
* **what they thought was right for them** – This means that they all did whatever they wanted to do, including many evil things.

# Enemies Defeated Israel 16-02

Because the **Israelites** kept **disobeying** **God**, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. These enemies stole things from the Israelites, destroyed their property, and killed many of them. After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and **asked God to rescue them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **asked God to rescue them** - That is, they asked God to help them and to set them free from their enemies.

# The Deliverer 16-03

Then **God provided** a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and **brought peace** to **the land**. But then **the people forgot about God** and started **worshiping** **idols** again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.

## Translation Notes:

* **God provided** - This could be translated as, “God chose” or, “God appointed” or, “God raised up.”
* **brought peace** - This could be translated as, “allowed the people to live without fear” or, “ended the fighting” or, “stopped their enemies from attacking them.”
* **the land** - That refers to Canaan, the Promised Land that God had given to Abraham.
* **the people forgot about God** - This means, “The people stopped thinking about God and ignored what he had commanded them.”

# The Rule of Midian 16-04

The **Midianites** took all of the **Israelites’ crops** for seven years. The Israelites were **so scared; they hid** in caves so the Midianites would not find them. Finally, they **cried out** to **God** to **save them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **crops** - This refers to plants that the Israelites were growing in their gardens or fields for food.
* **were so scared; they hid** – This could be translated as, “were very afraid of the Midianites, so they hid.”
* **cried out** - This might be translated as, “they called out” or, “they prayed desperately.”
* **save them** – This might be translated as, “set them free” or, “rescue them from these enemies.”

# An Angel Spoke to Gideon 16-05

**One day**, a man of Israel named **Gideon** was **threshing grain secretly** so the **Midianites** would not steal it. The **angel** of **Yahweh** came to Gideon and said, “**God is with you**, mighty warrior. Go and save **Israel** from the Midianites.”

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **threshing grain** - The grain was wheat, which has a head of many small grains, or seeds, on the top of a thin stalk. “Threshing” is separating the seeds of the plant from the stalks by beating the heads of grain. The seeds are food, but the stalks are not.
* **secretly** - Gideon was threshing the grain in a hidden location, so the Midianites would not see him.
* **God is with you** – This means, “God is present with you in a special way” or, “God has plans to use you in a special way.”

# Gideon Destroyed the Idol 16-06

**Gideon’s** father had an **altar** dedicated to an **idol**. **God** told Gideon **to tear down** that altar. But Gideon was **afraid of the people**, so he **waited until nighttime**. Then he tore down the altar and smashed it to pieces. He built a new altar to God near where the altar to the idol used to be and made a **sacrifice** to God on it.

## Translation Notes:

* **to tear down** - This means, “to violently bring down” or, “to take down and destroy.”
* **afraid of the people** - Gideon was afraid that his fellow Israelites who worshiped the same idol would be angry with him.
* **waited until nighttime** - Another way to say this would be, “waited until after dark.” Gideon smashed the altar at night when everyone was asleep so that no one would see him do it.

# Gideon Was Rescued 16-07

The next morning the people saw that someone had torn down and destroyed the **altar**, and they were very angry. They went to **Gideon’s** house to kill him, but Gideon’s father said, “**Why are you trying to help your god**? **If he is a god, let him protect himself**!” Because he said this, the people did not kill Gideon.

## Translation Notes:

* **Why are you trying to help your god?** - This is not a real question that asks for information. Another way of saying this would be, “You should not be trying to help your god” or, “You should not need to help your god.”
* **If he is a god, let him protect himself** - This means, “If he were truly a god, he would be able to defend himself.”

# Midian Attacked Israel Again 16-08

Then the **Midianites came again to steal from the Israelites**. There were so many of them that **they could not be counted**. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. Gideon asked **God** **for two signs** so he could be sure **that God would use him to save Israel**.

## Translation Notes:

* **came again to steal from the Israelites** – This could be translated as, “came again to the Israelites’ land to steal things from them.”
* **they could not be counted** - This could be translated as, “The number of the Midianites was too great to count” or, “it would be very difficult to count all of the Midianites.”
* **for two signs** - This could be translated as, “to do two miracles” or, “to make two impossible things happen.”
* **that God would use him** – This could be translated as, “that God would enable him” or, “that God would help him” or, “that God was calling him.”
* **to save Israel** - This could be translated as, “to rescue Israel from the Midianites.”

# The Wet Cloth 16-09

For the first **sign**, **Gideon** laid a cloth on the ground and asked **God** to **let the morning dew fall** only on the cloth and not on the ground. **God did that**. The next night, he asked that the ground be wet but the cloth dry. God did that too. These two signs convinced Gideon that God would use him to **save** **Israel** from the **Midianites**.

## Translation Notes:

* **sign** - This could be translated as, “miracle” or, “impossible thing.”
* **let the morning dew fall** - This can be translated as, “make the morning dew appear” or, “make the morning dew come up.” “Dew” refers to the drops of water that appear on the ground in the morning. Dew naturally covers everything equally.
* **God did that** - This could be translated as, “God did what Gideon asked him to do.”

# Too Many Soldiers 16-10

**32,000 Israelite soldiers came to Gideon**, but **God** told him this was **too many**. So Gideon sent home 22,000 who were afraid to fight. God told Gideon that he still had too many men. So Gideon sent all of them home **except for 300 soldiers**.

## Translation Notes:

* **32,000 Israelite soldiers came to Gideon** - Some languages might need to insert the following sentence at the beginning of the story: “Gideon called the Israelites to come fight against the Midianites.” See
* **too many** - This was more soldiers than God wanted for this fight. If that many solders fought and won, they would think that they won the battle with their own strength, and they would not know that God did it.
* **except for 300 soldiers** - This sentence could be translated as, “So Gideon allowed only 300 men to stay, and the rest of the men went home.”

# The Midianite’s Dream 16-11

That night **God** told **Gideon**, “**Go down** to the **Midianite** camp and when you hear what they say, you will **no longer be afraid**.” So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about **something he had dreamed**. The man’s friend said, “This dream means that Gideon’s army will defeat the Midianite army!” When Gideon heard this, he **worshiped** God.

## Translation Notes:

* **Go down** - The Midianite soldiers were camping out in a valley and were at a lower elevation than the Israelite soldiers.
* **you will no longer be afraid** – That is, “you will stop being afraid.”
* **something he had dreamed** – That is, “something he had seen in a dream” or, “a dream he had had.”

# Gideon’s Army 16-12

Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a **horn**, a clay pot, and **a torch**. They surrounded the camp where the **Midianite** soldiers were sleeping. Gideon’s 300 men soldiers had the torches in the pots so the Midianites could not see the light of the torches.

## Translation Notes:

* **horn** - This could be translated as, “trumpet” or, “ram’s horn trumpet.” These horns came from a male sheep and were often used to call men for battle.
* **a torch** - This was probably a piece of wood wrapped with cloth and soaked in oil so that it could burn well. (This was not the modern torch that runs on batteries.)

# The Attack 16-13

Then, all of **Gideon’s** soldiers broke their pots at the same moment, suddenly revealing the fire of the torches. They blew their horns and **shouted**, “**A sword for God and for Gideon**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **shouted** - This could be translated as, “yelled loudly” or, “said with a very loud voice.”
* **sword** - A sword is a weapon that has a long sharp blade and a handle at one end. People hold the handle and hit or stab the enemy with the sharp blade. If your people don’t have a weapon just like this, you could translate it as a “long knife,” “machete” or, “bush knife.”
* **A sword for God and for Gideon** - This means, “We fight for God and for Gideon!”

# God Defeated the Midianites 16-14

**God confused the Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other. Immediately, **the rest of the Israelites were called** from their homes to come help chase the Midianites. They killed many of them and chased the rest of them out of the Israelites’ land. 120,000 Midianites died that day. God had **saved** **Israel**.

## Translation Notes:

* **God confused the Midianites** - God caused the Midianites to be confused. They wanted to attack the Israelites, but instead, they attacked each other.
* **the rest of the Israelites** - This could be translated as, “many other Israelite men.” This refers to the soldiers previously sent home in
* **were called** – That is, “were called out” or, “were summoned.” This sentence could also be translated as, “Gideon sent messengers to summon many other Israelite men from their homes.”

# An Offering for Gideon 16-15

The people wanted to make **Gideon** their **king**. Gideon **did not allow them to do this**, **but he asked them** for some of the gold rings that each of them had taken from the **Midianites**. The people gave Gideon a large amount of gold.

## Translation Notes:

* **did not allow them to do this** - Gideon knew that it was better for the Israelites to have God as their king.
* **but he asked them** – This phrase starts with “but” because what he did next was not wise.

# Gideon Made an Idol 16-16

Then **Gideon used the gold to make a special garment** like the **high priest** used to wear. But the people started **worshiping** it as if it were an **idol**. So **God** **punished** **Israel** again because they worshiped idols. God allowed their enemies to defeat them. They finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Gideon used the gold to make a special garment** – This could be translated as, “Gideon melted down the gold objects the people had given him and formed a special garment out of that gold.”
* **turned away from God** - This could be translated as, “disobeyed God” or, “stopped worshiping God.”

# Sin and Deliverance 16-17

**This pattern repeated many times**: the **Israelites** would **sin**, **God** would **punish** them, they would **repent**, and God would send a **deliverer** to **save** them. Over many years, God sent many deliverers who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

## Translation Notes:

* **This pattern repeated many times** - This could be translated as, “These things kept happening again and again” or, “These things happened many times.”

# Israel Wanted a King 16-18

**Finally**, the people **asked God for a king like all the other nations had**. They wanted a king who was tall and strong, and who could lead them into battle. **God did not like this request**, but he gave them a king just as they had asked.

*A Bible story from: Judges 1-3; 6-8*

## Translation Notes:

* **Finally** - This could be translated as, “After their enemies attacked them many times” or, “After many years of being attacked by many different nations.”
* **asked God for a king** - This could be translated as, “demanded that God give them a king” or, “kept asking God for a king.”
* **like all the other nations had** - Other nations had a king. Israel wanted to be like them and have a king too.
* **God did not like this request** – This could be translated as, “God did not agree with what they had asked him for.” God knew that they were rejecting him as their ruler and were instead choosing to follow a human leader.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Wicked King Saul 17-01

**Saul** was the **first king of Israel**. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. Saul was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not **obey** **God**, so God chose a different man who would **one day be king in his place**.

## Translation Notes:

* **first king of Israel** – This could be translated as, “first king to rule over Israel.”
* **one day** – This could be translated as, “some time in the future” or “years later.”
* **be king in his place** – Another way to say this would be, “take his place as king over Israel” or, “rule as king instead of him.”

# David the Shepherd 17-02

**God** chose a young **Israelite** named **David** to be **king** after **Saul**. David was a **shepherd** from the town of **Bethlehem**. At different times while he was **watching** his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep. David was a **humble** and **righteous** man who **trusted** and **obeyed** God.

## Translation Notes:

* **watching** - That is, “caring for” or, “protecting” or, “taking care of.”

# David Killed Goliath 17-03

**David** became a great soldier and leader. When David was still a young man, he fought against **a giant named Goliath**. Goliath was a trained soldier, very strong, and almost three meters tall! But **God** helped David kill Goliath and save **Israel**. After that, David won many victories over Israel’s enemies, for which the people **praised** him.

## Translation Notes:

* **a giant named Goliath** - The word “giant” here describes a person who is unusually large and powerful. Goliath was a huge soldier in an army that was fighting against Israel.

# Saul Chased David 17-04

**Saul** became jealous of the people’s **love** for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so David hid from Saul. **One day**, Saul was looking for David so he could kill him. Saul went into the same cave where David was hiding from Saul, but Saul did not see him. David was now very close to Saul and could have killed him, but he did not. Instead, David cut off a piece of Saul’s clothes **to prove to Saul** that he would not kill him in order to become **king**.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **to prove to Saul** - That is, “to convince Saul” or, “to show Saul.”
* **to become king** – David would not dishonor God by killing the man that God placed as king over Israel.

# David Became King 17-05

Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and **David** became **king** of **Israel**. He was a good king, and the people **loved** him. **God** **blessed** David and **made him successful**. David fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel’s enemies. David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it **his capital city**. **During David’s reign**, Israel became powerful and wealthy.

## Translation Notes:

* **made him successful** - That is, “helped him accomplish the good things he wanted to do.”
* **his capital city** - That is, “the capital city of his kingdom.” David lived in Jerusalem and ruled from there.
* **During David’s reign** - That is, “During the time when David was king over Israel” or, “During the time when David was ruling as king over Israel.”

# David Wanted to Build a Temple 17-06

**David** wanted to **build a temple** where all the **Israelites** could **worship** **God** and offer him **sacrifices**. For about 400 years, the people had been worshiping God and offering sacrifices to him at the **Tent of Meeting** that **Moses** had built.

## Translation Notes:

* **build a temple** - David wanted to construct a permanent building for worshiping God that would replace the portable Tent of Meeting.

# God’s Promise to David 17-07

But **God** sent **the prophet Nathan** to **David** with this message, “Because you are a **man of war**, you will not build **this Temple** for me. Your **son** will build it. But, I will **bless** you greatly. Someone from your family will always rule as **king** of **Israel**, and the **Messiah** will be one of your **descendants**!” The Messiah was God’s Chosen One who would save people of the world from **sin**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the prophet Nathan** – It may be more natural in some languages to say, “a prophet named Nathan.”
* **man of war** - That is, “man who fights battles.” David killed many, many people in battle against the Israelites’ enemies. God wasn’t punishing David, but God wanted a man of peace to build the Temple where people would worship him.
* **this Temple** - That is, “this building for worship” or, “this place of worship.”
* **from sin** - That is, “from the terrible consequences of their sin.”

# David Praised God 17-08

When **David** heard **these words**, he immediately thanked and **praised** **God** because he had **promised** David **this great honor** and many **blessings**. David did not know when God would do these things. But as it happened, the **Israelites** would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.

## Translation Notes:

* **these words** - That is, “the words the prophet had just said.” This refers back to the promises in
* **this great honor** - People who lived later would highly respect David because some of his descendants would be kings over Israel and one of them would be the Messiah.

# God Blessed David 17-09

**David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years**, and **God** **blessed** him. However, **toward the end of his life** he **sinned terribly** against God.

## Translation Notes:

* **David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years** - This could be translated as, “When David ruled the people, for many years he did what was right and fair, and he was faithful to God.”
* **toward the end of his life** - This may be translated as, “when David was older” or “later on in David’s life.”
* **sinned terribly** - That is, “sinned in a very evil way.” David’s sin was especially evil.

# David and Bathsheba 17-10

**One day**, when all of **David’s** soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he looked out from his palace and **saw** a beautiful woman **bathing**. Her name was **Bathsheba**.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **saw** - Bathsheba may have been bathing at her own house, but David’s palace was very high and he was able to see over walls that were lower.
* **bathing** - This may be translated as, “taking a bath” or, “washing herself.”

# David’s Sin 17-11

**Instead of looking away**, **David** sent someone to bring her to him. **He slept with her** and sent her back home. A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.

## Translation Notes:

* **Instead of looking away** - That is, David did not look away from the woman as she bathed, as he should have done.
* **He slept with her** - This is a polite way to say that David had sexual relations with Bathsheba.

# David Murdered Uriah 17-12

**Bathsheba’s** husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of **David’s** best soldiers. David called Uriah back from the battle and told him to **go be with his wife**. But Uriah refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent Uriah back to the battle and told the general to place him **where the enemy was strongest** so that he would be killed.

## Translation Notes:

* **go be with his wife** - That is, “go home to be intimate with his wife.” David wanted people, especially Uriah, to believe that Bathsheba was pregnant with Uriah’s child.
* **where the enemy was strongest** - That is, the location in the battle where the most fighting was going on.

# Nathan Rebuked David 17-13

After **Uriah** was killed, **David** married **Bathsheba**. Later, she gave birth to David’s son. **God** was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** **Nathan** to tell David how **evil** his **sin** was. David **repented** of his sin and God **forgave** him. For the rest of his life, **David followed and obeyed God**, even in difficult times.

## Translation Notes:

* **what David had done** - This refers to David’s adultery with Bathsheba and his murder of her husband, Uriah.

# Solomon Was Born 17-14

But as **punishment** for **David’s** **sin**, his baby boy died. There was also **fighting in David’s family** for the rest of his life, and **David’s power was greatly weakened**. Though David had been unfaithful to **God**, God was still **faithful** to his **promises**. Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.

*A Bible story from: 1 Samuel 10; 15-19; 24; 31; 2 Samuel 5; 7; 11-12*

## Translation Notes:

* **fighting in David’s family** - This “fighting” was very serious. Among other things, one of his sons murdered another son and tried to take David’s place as king while David was still reigning. If possible, use a word that conveys the intensity of this conflict within the family.
* **David’s power was greatly weakened** - This might be translated as, “David became less powerful” or, “David lost much of his authority.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# God Made Solomon Wise 18-01

After many years, **David** died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule over **Israel**. **God** spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most. When Solomon **asked for wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise **judge**. God also made him very wealthy.

## Translation Notes:

* **asked for wisdom** - This could be translated as, “asked God to make him wise.”

# Solomon Built the Temple 18-02

In **Jerusalem**, **Solomon** built the **Temple** for which his father **David** had planned and gathered materials. People now **worshiped** **God** and offered **sacrifices** to him at the Temple instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**. God came and **was present in the Temple**, and he lived there **with his people**.

## Translation Notes:

* **was present in the Temple** – That is, “was present in the Temple in a special way.” Even though God was also present everywhere else at the same time, he made himself especially available to the people at the Temple.
* **with his people** - This could be translated as, “in the midst of his people” or, “among his people.”

# Solomon Served Other Gods 18-03

But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. He **disobeyed** **God** by marrying many women, almost 1,000 of them! Many of these women came from foreign countries and **brought their gods with them** and continued to **worship** them. When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods.

## Translation Notes:

* **brought their gods with them** - They brought their idols and their methods of worshiping idols with them to Israel.

# The Kingdom Would Divide 18-04

**God** was angry with **Solomon** and, **as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide** the nation of **Israel** into two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

## Translation Notes:

* **as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide** – This could be translated as, “to punish Solomon for being unfaithful to him, God solemnly said that he would divide.”

# Rehoboam Became King 18-05

After **Solomon** died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became **king**. Rehoboam was a foolish man. All the people of the **nation of Israel** came together to **confirm him as king**. They complained to Rehoboam that Solomon had made them do a lot of hard work and pay a lot of taxes.

## Translation Notes:

* **confirm him as king** - That is, “tell him that they were glad he was king and that they would do what he said.”

# Rehoboam’s Foolish Answer 18-06

**Rehoboam** **foolishly answered** them, “You thought my father **Solomon** made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will **punish** you more harshly than he did.”

## Translation Notes:

* **foolishly answered** - Rehoboam’s answer was harsh, and caused the people to turn against him.

# Israel Rebelled against Judah 18-07

Ten of the **tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam**. Only two tribes **remained faithful to him**. These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.

## Translation Notes:

* **tribes of the nation of Israel** - The descendants of each of Jacob’s twelve sons had become a “tribe” or very large family group in the nation of Israel. Everyone in Israel belonged to one of the twelve tribes.
* **rebelled against Rehoboam** – That is, “refused to follow Rehoboam as their king.” It might help to start this sentence with, “So” or, “Because of that” or, “Because of what Rehoboam said.”
* **remained faithful to him** – That is, “stayed loyal to him” or, “continued to support him as king.”

# Jeroboam Ruled Israel 18-08

The other ten tribes of the **nation of Israel** that rebelled against **Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king**. They **set up their kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.

## Translation Notes:

* **set up their kingdom** - This may be translated as, they “established” or, “built” their kingdom. This sentence may also be translated as, “They separated themselves from the other two tribes and lived in the northern part of the land, and they called their country ‘Israel.’”

# Jeroboam Made an Idol 18-09

**Jeroboam** **rebelled** against **God** and **caused the people to sin**. He built two **idols** for his people to **worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah**.

## Translation Notes:

* **caused the people to sin** - This could be translated as, “led the people to sin” or, “motivated the people to sin.” Rehoboam led the people into sin by making idols for them to worship.
* **instead of worshiping God at…Judah** - This can be translated as, “so that they would not worship God at” or, “instead of going to the kingdom of Judah to worship God at the Temple.”

# Israel and Judah at War 18-10

The **kingdoms** of **Judah** and **Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.

## Translation Notes:

* **Judah and Israel** - The people of Judah and Israel were all descendants of Jacob and part of God’s people. Even so, they disobeyed God and fought and killed each other.

# The Evil Kings of Israel 18-11

In the new **kingdom** of **Israel**, all the **kings** were **evil**. Many of these kings were killed by other **Israelites** who wanted to become king in their place.

## Translation Notes:

* **Israelites** - Here, “Israelites” refers only to the people living in the northern kingdom of Israel, not to the people living in the southern kingdom of Judah.

# Israel Worshiped Idols 18-12

All of the **kings** and most of the people of the **kingdom of Israel** **worshiped** **idols**. Their idol worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even **child sacrifice**.

## Translation Notes:

* **child sacrifice** - They killed children as offerings to some of their idols.

# Judah Was Unfaithful 18-13

The **kings** of **Judah** were **descendants** of **David**. Some of these kings were **good** men who **ruled justly** and **worshiped** **God**. But most of Judah’s kings were **evil**, **corrupt**, and they worshiped **idols**. Some of the kings even **sacrificed** their children to false **gods**. Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.

*A Bible story from: 1 Kings 1-6; 11-12*

## Translation Notes:

* **ruled justly** - This means they ruled according to God’s laws. This can be translated as, “when they ruled, they did what was right.”
* **corrupt** - This can be translated as, “did what was wrong in order to get whatever they wanted.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# God Sent the Prophets 19-01

**Throughout the history of** the **Israelites**, **God** sent them **prophets**. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

## Translation Notes:

* **Throughout the history of** - This expression means that God sent many prophets at many different times during all of the years that Israel and Judah existed.
* **Israelites** - This could be translated here as, “the kingdoms of Israel and Judah.” All of the descendants of Jacob, including those in the kingdom of Judah, continued to be called “Israelites.”

# Elijah Rebuked Ahab 19-02

**Elijah** was a **prophet** when **Ahab** was **king** over the **kingdom of Israel**. Ahab was an **evil** man who encouraged people to **worship** a false **god** named **Baal**. Elijah said to Ahab, “There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel **until I say so**.” **This made Ahab very angry**.

## Translation Notes:

* **until I say so** - This may be translated as, “until I command the rain and dew to come again.”
* **This made Ahab very angry** – This could be translated as, “When Ahab heard what Elijah said, he became very angry.”

# God Provided for Elijah 19-03

**God** told **Elijah** to go to a stream in **the wilderness** to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat. **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him. **The drought** was so severe that the stream eventually dried up.

## Translation Notes:

* **the wilderness** - This was a remote location with very few people. This may also be translated as, “desert” or, “the bush.”
* **The drought** - This could be translated as, “the lack of rain.” This drought was a result of Elijah declaring that there would be no rain.

# God Provided for the Widow 19-04

So **Elijah** went to a **neighboring country**. A widow and her son in that country had almost run out of food because of **the famine**. But they **took care of** Elijah, and **God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty**. They had food through the whole famine. Elijah stayed there for several years.

## Translation Notes:

* **neighboring country** - This refers to a country that was beside, or shared a border with Israel.
* **the famine** - If needed, this could be translated as, “the famine caused by the drought.”
* **took care of** – This means they gave him a place to stay in their house and provided food for him. It does not mean he was sick.
* **God provided for them…never became empty** - This could be translated as, “God prevented their flour jar and their bottle of oil from becoming empty” or, “God caused…to never become empty.”
* **flour jar** - This refers to a clay jar in which the widow kept her supply of flour.
* **bottle of oil** - In Israel, olive oil is used for cooking. This could be translated as, “bottle of cooking oil.” The widow used the flour and the oil for making bread.

# Elijah Challenged Ahab 19-05

After three and a half years, **God** told **Elijah** to return to the **kingdom of Israel** and **speak with Ahab because he was going to send** rain again. When Ahab saw Elijah he said, “There you are, **you troublemaker**!” Elijah replied to him, “You are the troublemaker! **You have abandoned Yahweh**, the true God, and **worshiped** **Baal**. Bring all the people of the kingdom of Israel to **Mount Carmel**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **speak with Ahab because he was going to send** – This could be translated as, “tell Ahab that God was going to send.”
* **you troublemaker** - This means, “You are a troublemaker!” Ahab was accusing Elijah of causing trouble by telling the king that he was doing wrong and also by stopping the rain.
* **You have abandoned Yahweh** - That is, Ahab had led Israel to stop worshiping and obeying Yahweh.
* **Mount Carmel** - Mount Carmel is the name of a mountain located in northern Israel. It is over 500 meters high.

# Elijah and the Prophets of Baal 19-06

All the people of the **kingdom of Israel**, including the 450 **prophets** of **Baal**, came to **Mount Carmel**. **Elijah** said to the people, “**How long will you** keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, serve him! **If Baal is God**, serve him!”

## Translation Notes:

* **Mount Carmel** - See how you translated this in - **How long will you** - This is not a real question asking for information. Elijah was rebuking the Israelites for repeatedly changing their minds about whether they would serve Yahweh or Baal. Some languages will have to express this as a statement such as, “Stop changing your minds about whom you will worship!”
* **If Yahweh is God…If Baal is God** - This does not mean that Elijah was undecided. He knew that Yahweh is the real God. He wanted the people to understand that when they worship false gods, they are rejecting Yahweh as the only true God. Translate this in a way that shows that the people had to make a choice.

# A Sacrifice Without Fire 19-07

Then **Elijah** said to the **prophets** of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a **sacrifice**, but do not light the fire. I will do the same. The **God who answers with fire** is **the real God**.” So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.

## Translation Notes:

* **who answers with fire** - That is, “who supernaturally sends fire to burn up the sacrifice.”
* **the real God** - This means the one and only true God.

# Baal Did Not Answer 19-08

Then the **prophets** of **Baal** **prayed to Baal**, “Hear us, Baal!” All day long they prayed and **shouted** and even **cut themselves with knives**, but **there was no answer**.

## Translation Notes:

* **prayed to Baal** - the prophets of Baal asked Baal to send fire onto the bull they prepared as a sacrifice.
* **shouted** - They yelled or called out loudly to Baal. - **cut themselves with knives** - They injured themselves with knives as an extreme way to show their devotion to Baal, hoping that this would persuade him to listen to them.
* **there was no answer** - There was no response of any kind to their shouting, and no fire came to burn up the sacrifice.

# Elijah Prepared the Sacrifice 19-09

At the end of the day, **Elijah** prepared a **sacrifice** to **God**. Then he told the people to pour twelve huge pots of water on top of the sacrifice until the meat, the wood, and even the ground around the **altar** were completely wet.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# The Prayer of Elijah 19-10

Then **Elijah** **prayed**, “**Yahweh**, **God** of **Abraham**, **Isaac**, and **Jacob**, **show us** today that you are the God of **Israel** and that **I am your servant**. **Answer me** so that **these people will know** that you are the **true** God.”

## Translation Notes:

* **show us** - That is, “prove to us” or, “demonstrate to us.”
* **I am your servant** - This could be translated as, “You have given me authority to serve you and do these things.”
* **Answer me** - That is, “respond to my prayer” or, “send the fire that I have asked you for.”
* **these people will know** - This may be translated as, “these people will see and understand.”

# God Answered with Fire 19-11

Immediately, fire **fell from the sky** and burned up the meat, the wood, the rocks, the dirt, and even the water that was around the **altar**. When the people saw this, they **fell on the ground** and said, “**Yahweh is God**! Yahweh is God!”

## Translation Notes:

* **fell from the sky** - This may be translated as, “suddenly came down from the sky.”
* **fell on the ground** - They quickly lay down or knelt down on the ground. They were afraid of Yahweh because they had seen his power. They knew that only the true God could do that and bowed down to honor and worship him.
* **Yahweh is God** - This expression means that they understood that Yahweh is the only God, not just one god among others.

# Killing the Prophets of Baal 19-12

Then **Elijah** said, “Do not let any of the **prophets** of **Baal escape**!” So the people **captured** the prophets of Baal. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

## Translation Notes:

* **escape** - The prophets of Baal tried to run away after their god was proven to be a false god.
* **captured** – That is, “seized and held onto” or, “took hold of.”

# A Storm Ended the Drought 19-13

Then **Elijah** said to **King** **Ahab**, “Return immediately to the city, because the rain is coming.” Soon **the sky grew black**, and a heavy rain began. **Yahweh** had ended the **drought** and proved that he is the true **God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the sky grew black** - That is, “the sky became very dark.” Heavy rainclouds covered the sky, making it look dark grey or black.
* **drought** – That is, “long dry time with no rain.”

# Naaman Came to Elisha 19-14

After the time of **Elijah**, **God** chose a man named Elisha to be his **prophet**. God did many **miracles** through Elisha. One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, **an enemy commander**, who had a horrible skin disease. **He had heard of Elisha** so **he went and asked Elisha** to **heal** him. Elisha told Naaman to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

## Translation Notes:

* **an enemy commander** - Naaman was a commander in the army of one of the countries that was Israel’s enemy.
* **He had heard of Elisha** - This means that people had told Naaman that Elisha was able to perform miracles.
* **he went and asked Elisha** - That is, “he went to see Elisha and asked him.” Naaman had to go into Israel to find Elisha and ask him to do this.

# Naaman Was Healed 19-15

At first **Naaman** was angry and **would not do it because it seemed foolish**. But later **he changed his mind** and dipped himself seven times in the **Jordan River**. When he came up the last time, his skin was completely **healed**! **God** had healed him.

## Translation Notes:

* **would not do it because it seemed foolish** - Naaman would not do what Elisha said because he knew that washing alone could not heal his disease.
* **he changed his mind** - That is, “he decided to do what Elisha had told him to do.”

# The Prophets Warned the People 19-16

**God** sent many other **prophets**. They all told the people to stop **worshiping** **idols** and to **start showing justice and mercy** to others. The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing **evil** and start **obeying** God, then God would **judge** them as **guilty**, and he would **punish** them.

## Translation Notes:

* **start showing justice and mercy** - This can be translated as, “start being just and merciful” or, “begin to demonstrate justice and mercy.”

# Jeremiah Suffered for God 19-17

Most of the time, the people did not **obey** **God**. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them. Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a **dry well** and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the **king had mercy on him** and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.

## Translation Notes:

* **dry well** - The well did not currently have any water in it, but it did still have mud in the bottom. This could be translated as, “empty well.”
* **had mercy on him** – This means he was kind to Jeremiah and helped him.

# The Message of the Prophets 19-18

The **prophets continued to speak for God** even though the people hated them. They warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**. They also reminded people **of the promise that God’s Messiah would come**.

*A Bible story from: 1 Kings 16-18; 2 Kings 5; Jeremiah 38*

## Translation Notes:

* **continued to speak for God** - That is, “continued to tell the people what God wanted to tell them.”
* **of the promise that God’s Messiah would come** – This could be translated as, “that God had promised that his Messiah would come to save his people.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Israel Sinned 20-01

The **kingdom of Israel** and the **kingdom of Judah** both **sinned** against **God**. They **broke the covenant** that God had made with them at **Sinai**. God sent his **prophets** to **warn them to repent** and **worship** him again, but they refused to **obey**.

## Translation Notes:

* **broke the covenant** - That is, “disobeyed the commands God had given them in his covenant with them at Mount Sinai.”
* **warn them to repent and worship him again** – Another way to translate this would be, “tell them to stop sinning and to worship Yahweh instead of other gods, or terrible things would happen to them.”

# Assyria Destroyed Israel 20-02

So **God** **punished both kingdoms** by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation, destroyed the **kingdom of Israel**. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, **took away** everything of value, and burned much of the country.

## Translation Notes:

* **both kingdoms** - This refers to both the kingdoms of Israel and Judah.
* **Empire** - A country was called an “empire” when it was powerful enough to extend its authority over many other countries.
* **took away** - That is, “stole.” They stole these valuable things and carried them back to Assyria.

# Israel Was Removed from the Land 20-03

The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with **skills** and took them to Assyria. Only the very poor **Israelites** who had not been killed **remained** in the **kingdom of Israel**.

## Translation Notes:

* **skills** – This refers to practical skills such as woodworking, metalworking, and building.
* **remained** - That is, “stayed” or, “were left behind” or, “were allowed to stay behind.”

# Foreigners Were Brought to Israel 20-04

Then the **Assyrians** brought **foreigners** to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the **Israelites** who were left there. The **descendants** of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.

## Translation Notes:

* **foreigners** - This refers to people who were not Israelites.

# Judah also Worshiped Idols 20-05

The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how **God** had **punished** the people of the **kingdom of Israel** **for not believing and obeying him**. But they still **worshiped** **idols**, including the **gods** of the **Canaanites**. God sent **prophets** to **warn them**, but **they refused to listen**.

## Translation Notes:

* **for not believing and obeying him** – Another way to translate this would be, “because they did not believe or obey him.”
* **warn them** – That is, “tell them to stop sinning or terrible things would happen to them.”
* **they refused to listen** - That is, “they refused to obey” or “they refused to stop their evil behavior.”

# Judah Served Babylon 20-06

About 100 years after the **Assyrians** destroyed the **kingdom of Israel**, **God** sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, **king** of the **Babylonians**, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**. **Babylon** was a powerful **empire**. The king of Judah agreed **to be Nebuchadnezzar’s servant** and pay him a lot of money every year.

## Translation Notes:

* **empire** - See how you translated this in - **agreed to be** – The king of Judah was forced to either serve the Babylonian king or be destroyed.
* **to be Nebuchadnezzar’s servant** - This could be translated as, “to govern Judah under Nebuchadnezzar’s command.”

# Babylon Destroyed Judah 20-07

But after a few years, the king of **Judah rebelled** against **Babylon**. So, the Babylonians **came back** and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They **captured the city** of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the **Temple**, and **took away** all the treasures of the city and the Temple.

## Translation Notes:

* **came back** - This may also be translated as, “returned” or “came to Judah again.”
* **captured the city** - That is, “took control of the city and the people there.”
* **took away** - They carried the treasures with them back to Babylon.

# The Kind of Judah Was Punished 20-08

**To punish** the **king** of **Judah** for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar’s** soldiers killed the king’s **sons in front of him** and then **made him blind**. After that, they took the king away to die in prison in **Babylon**.

## Translation Notes:

* **To punish** - Nebuchadnezzar punished the king of Judah by telling his soldiers to do these things.
* **in front of him** - This may be translated as, “where he could see,” or “so that he could see it,” or “before his eyes.”
* **made him blind** - This may also be translated as, “destroyed his eyes.”

# Judah Was Taken to Babylon 20-09

**Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the **kingdom of Judah** to **Babylon**, **leaving only the poorest people behind** to plant the fields. **This period of time** when **God’s** people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the **Exile**.

## Translation Notes:

* **leaving…behind** - That is, “leaving only the poorest people in Judah” or, “letting only the poorest people stay in Judah.”
* **This period of time** - To translate this, choose a phrase that can refer to a long time, since this exile period lasted seventy years.
* **Exile** - The word “exile” means someone is removed from they country by force. The “Exile” is the term for this 70-year period when the Israelites were forced to live in Babylon.

# God Remembered His Promise 20-10

Even though **God** **punished** his people for their **sin** by taking them away into **exile**, he **did not forget** them or his **promises**. God continued to **watch over** his people and **speak to them through his prophets**. He promised that, after seventy years, they would return to the **Promised Land** again.

## Translation Notes:

* **exile** - See how you translated this term in - **did not forget**
* This could be translated as, “did not ignore” or, “did not neglect.” Or the whole phrase could be translated as, “continued to honor his commitment to his people and his promises.”
* **watch over** - That is, “take care of.” - **speak to them through his prophets** - This could be translated as, “tell his prophets messages that he wanted them to tell his people.”

# Persia Defeated Babylon 20-11

About **seventy years later**, **Cyrus**, the **king** of the **Persians**, defeated **Babylon**, so the Persian Empire replaced the Babylonian Empire. **The Israelites were now called Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon. Only a few very old Jews even remembered **the land of Judah**.

## Translation Notes:

* **seventy years later** - This refers to the seventy years that had passed since the Babylonian army took the people of Jerusalem into exile.
* **Cyrus** - Cyrus was also called, “Cyrus the Great.” The name “Cyrus” meant “like the sun” in the Persian language. However, since Cyrus was an important historical person, it might be best to transliterate his name, rather than translating the meaning.
* **Persians** - The Persian Empire grew to cover the area from central Asia to Egypt. Its home was located in the general area of modern-day Iran.
* **The Israelites were now called Jews** - This could also be translated as, “People now called the Israelites by the name ‘Jews.’”
* **the land of Judah** - That is, the area where the kingdom of Judah was located before the Exile. Jerusalem was the capital city of Judah.

# Cyrus Sent Judah Home 20-12

The **Persian Empire** was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered. Shortly after **Cyrus** became king of the Persians, he gave an order that any **Jew** who wanted **to return to Judah** could leave Persia and go back to Judah. He even gave them money to rebuild the **Temple**! So, after seventy years in **exile**, a small group of Jews **returned** to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

## Translation Notes:

* **Persian Empire** - See how you translated this term in - **Cyrus**
* See how you translated his name in - **Judah** - See the note about Judah in - **to return to Judah** - Since most of these Jews were the children and grandchildren of those who left Judah, they had never lived in Judah before. In some languages it might be better to say “to go to Judah.”
* **exile** - See how you translated this term in - **returned** – That is, “went back.” Some languages may prefer to say, “went” since most of these people had never been to Jerusalem.

# The Temple Was Rebuilt 20-13

When **the people** arrived in **Jerusalem**, they rebuilt the **Temple** and **the wall** around the city. Although they were still **ruled by other people**, **once again** they lived in the **Promised Land** and **worshiped at the Temple**.

*A Bible story from: 2 Kings 17; 24-25; 2 Chronicles 36; Ezra 1-10; Nehemiah 1-13*

## Translation Notes:

* **the people** - That is, the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob, who were now called the Jews.
* **the wall** - This wall was very thick and was built to protect the city from attackers.
* **ruled by other people** - That is, another nation controlled them. The Jews were ruled by the Persians at this time, and later by other nations.
* **once again** - In some languages this might need to be translated as, “now” or, “as their ancestors had done” or, “just as before the Exile.”
* **worshiped at the Temple** - They worshiped Yahweh, the One True God, at the Temple they rebuilt.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Messiah Will Defeat Satan 21-01

**From the very beginning**, **God** planned to send the **Messiah**. The first **promise** of the Messiah came to **Adam** and **Eve**. God promised that a **descendant** of Eve would be born who would **crush the snake’s head**. **The snake who deceived Eve was Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah would defeat Satan completely.

## Translation Notes:

* **From the very beginning** - That is, from when the earth was first created.
* **crush the snake’s head** - Unless the head of a venomous snake is crushed, the snake can still hurt someone. Use a word for “crush” that communicates that its head is destroyed.
* **The snake…was Satan** – Satan spoke to Eve in the form of a snake. This does not mean that he is a snake now. This could be translated as, “The snake…was an appearance of Satan.”
* **who deceived Eve** - That is, “who lied to Eve.” The snake lied by making Eve doubt what God had said and tricking her into disobeying God.

# A Promise for the Whole World 21-02

**God** promised **Abraham** that **through him** all **people groups** of the world would receive a **blessing**. This blessing would be **fulfilled** when the **Messiah** would come sometime in the future. He would make it possible for people from every people groups in the world to be **saved**.

## Translation Notes:

* **through him** – That is, “because of one of his descendants.”

# A Prophet Like Moses 21-03

**God** **promised** **Moses** that in the future he would **raise up another prophet like Moses**. This was another promise about the **Messiah** who would come at some later time.

## Translation Notes:

* **raise up another prophet like Moses** - That is, “appoint another prophet like Moses” or, “cause another prophet to come who would be like Moses.”
* **prophet like Moses** - To be like Moses, the future prophet would need to have great authority from God to lead and rescue his people.

# A Descendant of David 21-04

**God** **promised** **King David** that the **Messiah** would be one of **David’s own descendants**.

## Translation Notes:

* **David’s own descendants** - Another way to say this would be, “a direct descendant of David himself.”

# The New Covenant 21-05

**Through the prophet Jeremiah**, **God** **promised** that he would make a **New Covenant**, **but not like** the **covenant** God made with **Israel** at **Sinai**. In the New Covenant, God would **write his law on the people’s hearts**, the people would **know God** personally, they would **be his people**, and God would **forgive** their **sins**. The **Messiah** would **start the New Covenant**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Through the prophet Jeremiah God promised** – This could be translated as, “Through the messages that God gave to Jeremiah, God promised” or, “The prophet Jeremiah told the people God’s promise.”
* **but not like** - The New Covenant would be truly effective. People really would know God, they would truly live as his people, and He would forgive their sins completely, based on the Messiah’s sacrifice of himself one time for all who believe in him.
* **write his law on the people’s hearts** - This is a metaphor meaning, “help his people to understand his laws and to earnestly desire to obey them.” If possible, keep the image of writing on their hearts, since this is in contrast with the way God had written his law on stone tablets for the Israelites. If that is not possible, you could just translate the meaning.
* **be his people** - This could be translated as, “be his special people” or, “be his favored people.”
* **start the New Covenant** - That is, “be the one to cause the New Covenant to take effect” or, “bring the New Covenant to his people.”

# Prophet, Priest and King 21-06

**God’s** **prophets** also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a **priest**, and a **king**. A prophet is a person who hears the words of God and then proclaims God’s words to the people. The Messiah that God promised to send would be the **perfect prophet**.

## Translation Notes:

* **perfect prophet** - The Messiah would be a prophet who is perfect in obedience to God, giving every word God would speak to the people. He would present God perfectly to the people, helping them to know and understand God.

# The Perfect High Priest 21-07

**Israelite** **priests** made **sacrifices** to **God on behalf of** the people **as a substitute for the punishment for their sins**. Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. The **Messiah** would be the **perfect high priest** who would **offer himself** as a **perfect sacrifice** to God.

## Translation Notes:

* **on behalf of** - This may be translated as, “for the benefit of” or, “in the place of.”
* **as a substitute for the punishment for their sins** - God allowed people to bring animals to sacrifice for their sin as a reminder of the punishment that they deserved and their dependence on God to remove their sin. God accepted these sacrifices as a temporary covering for sin and did not punish the people for it.
* **perfect high priest** - Unlike the other high priests, the Messiah would never sin, and he would permanently take away all the sins of the people.
* **offer himself** – That is, “allow himself to be killed.” - **perfect sacrifice** - That is, “a sacrifice that has no fault or imperfection.”

# Messiah Will Rule Forever 21-08

A **king** is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and **judges** the people. The **Messiah** would be the perfect king who would **sit on the throne** of his ancestor **David**. He would reign over **the whole world** forever, and would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.

## Translation Notes:

* **sit on the throne of his ancestor David** - A throne is a ceremonial chair for a king or queen that represents their authority. This expression could also be translated as, “have the authority to reign as his ancestor King David did” or, “be the descendant of King David and continue his rule over God’s people.”
* **the whole world** - This could also be translated as, “everyone everywhere.”

# The Virgin Birth 21-09

**God’s** **prophets** predicted many other things about the **Messiah**. The prophet **Malachi** **foretold** that a great prophet would come before the Messiah came. The prophet **Isaiah** **prophesied** that **the Messiah would be born from a virgin**. The prophet **Micah** said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Malachi** - Malachi was the last prophet in the Old Testament.
* **foretold** - This could be translated as, “predicted” or, “prophesied.” It means to tell something that will happen in the future. Malachi spoke God’s message to the people 400 years before the Messiah came.
* **prophesied** – In this context, “prophesied” has the same meaning as “foretold” and “predicted” since it means the prophet told something that would happen far in the future.
* **the Messiah would be born from a virgin** - Another way to say this would be, “a virgin would give birth to the Messiah.”
* **Micah** - Micah was an Old Testament prophet of God who, like Isaiah, spoke his messages from God almost 800 years before the Messiah came.

# Messiah Will Heal 21-10

The **prophet** **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort **broken-hearted people**, and **proclaim freedom to captives** and **release to prisoners**. He also predicted that the **Messiah** would **heal** sick people and those who **could not hear, see, speak, or walk**.

## Translation Notes:

* **broken-hearted people** - This expression refers to people who are experiencing extreme sadness.
* **proclaim freedom to captives** - That is, “tell slaves they could be free.” This could also refer to freeing people from slavery to sin.
* **release to prisoners** - That is, “he will set free those who have unjustly been put into prison.” This could also refer to setting people free from the bondage of sin.
* **could not hear, see, speak, or walk** – It may be better to say, “could not hear, could not see, could not speak, or could not walk.” Some languages have special words for these conditions, such as “deaf” and “blind.”

# Messiah Will Be Betrayed 21-11

The **prophet** **Isaiah** also **prophesied** that the **Messiah** would be **hated without reason and rejected**. Other prophets **foretold** that those who killed the Messiah would **gamble for his clothes** and that a friend would **betray** him. The prophet **Zechariah** predicted that the friend would be paid **thirty silver coins** as payment for betraying the Messiah.

## Translation Notes:

* **hated without reason and rejected** - This could be translated as, “hated and rejected, even though he had done nothing wrong” or “…even though he was innocent.”
* **foretold** – This means they told about things that would happen in the future. Other words that have a similar meaning are, “predicted” and “prophesied.”
* **gamble for his clothes** - That is, “play a game of chance to determine who would win his clothes.”
* **Zechariah** - Zechariah was an Old Testament prophet who spoke to God’s people after they returned to the Promised Land from the Exile in Babylon. This was about 500 years before the Messiah came.
* **thirty silver coins** - At the time, each of these coins was worth the amount of money a person could earn in four days.

# The Death of the Messiah 21-12

The **prophets** also told about how the **Messiah** would **die**. **Isaiah** **prophesied** that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah. They would **pierce** him and he would die in great suffering and agony, even though he had not done anything wrong.

## Translation Notes:

* **pierce** - That is, “stab.” Sharp objects would penetrate his body as part of the punishment for people’s sin.

# The Messiah Will Bring Peace 21-13

The **prophets** also said that the **Messiah** would be perfect, **having no sin**. He would **die** to **receive the punishment for other people’s sin**. His punishment would bring **peace** between **God** and people. For this reason, **it was God’s will to crush the Messiah**.

## Translation Notes:

* **having no sin** - This can also be translated as “he never sinned.”
* **receive the punishment for other people’s sin** - That is, “to take on himself the punishment that other people deserved” or, “to be punished in the place of other people.”
* **it was God’s will** - That is, “it fulfilled God’s purpose.” This phrase means that the Messiah’s death was exactly what God had planned to happen in order that his sacrifice would pay for the sins of the people.
* **to crush** - That is, “to damage completely,” “to kill” or, “to completely destroy.”

# Resurrection of the Messiah 21-14

The **prophets** foretold that the **Messiah** would **die** and that **God** would also **raise him from the dead**. **Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would** accomplish his plan to **save** **sinners** and **start the New Covenant**.

## Translation Notes:

* **raise him from the dead** - That is, “cause him to be alive again.”
* **Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would** - This could also be translated as, “God would use the Messiah’s death and resurrection to” or “The Messiah’s death and resurrection would be the way that God would.”
* **start the New Covenant** – That is, “put the New Covenant into effect.”

# At the Perfect Time 21-15

**God** revealed to the **prophets** many things about the **Messiah**, but the Messiah did not come during the time of any of those prophets. More than 400 years after the last of these prophecies was given, at exactly the right time, God would send the Messiah **into the world**.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 3:15; 12:1-3; Deuteronomy 18:15; 2 Samuel 7; Jeremiah 31; Isaiah 59:16; Daniel 7; Malachi 4:5; Isaiah 7:14; Micah 5:2; Isaiah 9:1-7; 35:3-5; 61; 53; Psalm 22:18; 35:19; 69:4; 41:9; Zechariah 11:12-13; Isaiah 50:6; Psalm 16:10-11*

## Translation Notes:

* **into the world** - This could be translated as, “to the people of the world.” The Messiah would be sent not only to the Jews, but to all people.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# God Spoke to Zechariah 22-01

In the past, **God** had spoken to **his people** through his **angels** and **prophets**. But then **400 years went by when he did not speak to them**. Suddenly an angel came with a message from God to an old **priest** named **Zechariah**. Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, were **godly people**, but she had not been able to have any children.

## Translation Notes:

* **his people** - This could be translated as, “his people, the Israelites” or “his people, the Jews.” But only include the added information if it is not clearly understood who these people were.
* **400 years went by** - Another way to say this would be, “400 years passed” or “there were 400 years.” 400 years had passed since the last Old Testament prophet, Malachi.
* **when he did not speak to them** – That is, “during which God did not give any messages to the prophets for his people.”
* **godly people** - That is, “people who obeyed God.”

# You Will Have a Son 22-02

**The angel** said to **Zechariah**, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be **filled with the Holy Spirit**, and will **prepare the people for the Messiah**!” Zechariah responded, “My wife and I are too old to have children! How will I know this will happen?”

## Translation Notes:

* **The angel** - This refers to the angel that came to Zechariah in - **filled with the Holy Spirit** - That is, “controlled by the Holy Spirit” or, “given wisdom and power by the Holy Spirit.”
* **How will I know this will happen?** - Another way to translate this would be, “How can I be sure that this will truly happen?”

# Unable to Speak 22-03

The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by **God** to bring you this good news. Because you did not **believe** me, you will not be able to speak until the child is born.” Immediately, **Zechariah** was unable to speak. Then the angel left Zechariah. After this, Zechariah returned home and his wife **became pregnant**.

## Translation Notes:

* **became pregnant** - Some languages have polite ways of saying “become pregnant.” Use an expression that will not be embarrassing to readers.

# An Angel Spoke to Mary 22-04

When **Elizabeth** was **six months pregnant**, the same **angel** suddenly appeared to **Elizabeth’s relative**, whose name was **Mary**. She was a **virgin** and **was engaged** to be married to a man named **Joseph**. The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the **Messiah**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **six months pregnant** - Either she had already been pregnant for six months or she was in the sixth month of her pregnancy.
* **pregnant** - Different languages have different idioms to talk about pregnancy, such as “she was with child” or, “she had one in her body” or, “she had belly.” Some languages have special ways of speaking about it politely, such as “she was expecting.” Use an expression that will not be embarrassing to readers.
* **Elizabeth** - She was Zechariah’s wife. An angel told Zechariah that Elizabeth would give birth to a son.
* **Elizabeth’s relative** - Many translations say, “cousin” here but we don’t know exactly how these two women were related. A general term like, “relative,” “kin” or, “cousin” could be used.
* **was engaged** - That is, “was promised.”

# The Mother of the Messiah 22-05

**Mary** replied, “**How can this be**, since I am a **virgin**?” The **angel** explained, “The **Holy Spirit** will **come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you**. So the baby will be **holy**, the **Son of God**.” Mary **believed** and accepted what the angel said.

## Translation Notes:

* **How can this be** - That is, “How can I become pregnant?” Mary was not doubting the truth of the angel’s words, but asking how it would happen.
* **Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you** - These are two ways of saying the same thing: “By the power of God, the Holy Spirit will miraculously cause you to become pregnant.” Make sure the translation of this sentence does not sound like there was any physical contact involved. This was a miracle.

# Mary and Elizabeth 22-06

Soon after the **angel** spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited **Elizabeth**. **As soon as Elizabeth heard Mary’s greeting**, Elizabeth’s **baby jumped inside her**. The women rejoiced together about **what God had done for them**. After Mary visited Elizabeth for three months, Mary returned home.

## Translation Notes:

* **Elizabeth** - See the note about Elizabeth on - **As soon as Elizabeth heard Mary’s greeting** - For some languages it may be better to say, “Mary greeted Elizabeth and as soon as Elizabeth heard her.”
* **baby jumped inside her** - The baby moved suddenly inside Elizabeth’s womb in response to Mary’s greeting to Elizabeth.
* **what God had done for them** - This refers to the fact that both women were pregnant through God’s supernatural intervention. Mary had conceived without a man, and Elizabeth had conceived with Zechariah after she was past the age of childbearing.

# The Birth of John 22-07

After **Elizabeth** gave birth to her baby boy, **Zechariah** and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the **angel** had commanded. Then **God** allowed **Zechariah** to speak again. Zechariah said, “**Praise God**, because he has remembered his people! You, my son, **will be called** **the prophet** of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the **Messiah**!”

*A Bible story from: Luke 1*

## Translation Notes:

* **Elizabeth** - See the note about Elizabeth on - **Praise God**
* That is, “We should all praise God.” - **will be called** - This is another way of saying, “will be” or, “will be known as.” John would actually be the Prophet of the Most High God.
* **the prophet** - That is, “the very important prophet.” John would be the prophet that the Old Testament prophets had predicted would come before the Messiah.
* **Most High God** - Another way to say this would be, “the God who is greater than everything” or, “the God who rules over everything.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Mary Was Pregnant 23-01

**Mary** was engaged to a **righteous** man named **Joseph**. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, **he knew it was not his baby**. He did not want **to shame Mary**, so **he planned to quietly divorce her**. Before he could do that, an **angel** came and spoke to him **in a dream**.

## Translation Notes:

* **he knew it was not his baby** - That is, “he knew that he was not the one who had caused her to be pregnant.”
* **to shame Mary** - That is, “to cause Mary to be publicly disgraced” or “to embarrass Mary publicly.” Joseph was merciful to Mary, even though it seemed like she was an adulterer.
* **he planned to quietly divorce her** - This could also be translated as, “He planned to divorce her without telling others why,” or, “He planned to divorce her without telling others about her pregnancy.” Because Joseph was righteous, he wanted to resolve the situation in the best way possible, which in this culture would be to divorce her quietly.
* **divorce her** - For some languages it may be better to say, “break their engagement.” Joseph and Mary were engaged or, “pledged to be married.” But in Jewish culture a divorce was required in order to break off an engagement.
* **in a dream** – That is, “while he was asleep and dreaming.”

# Take Mary As Your Wife 23-02

!Joseph sleeping, angel appearing in

The **angel** said, “**Joseph**, **do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife**. The baby that is in her **is from the Holy Spirit**. She will give birth to a **son**. Name him **Jesus** (which means, ’\*\*Yahweh saves, because he will save the people from their **sins**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife** - This can also be translated as, “Stop thinking that you shouldn’t marry Mary” or, “Do not hesitate to have Mary as your wife.”
* **is from the Holy Spirit** - That is, “was conceived by a miracle of the Holy Spirit.”

# Joseph Married Mary 23-03

So **Joseph** married **Mary** and took her home as his wife, but **he did not sleep with her** until she had given birth.

## Translation Notes:

* **he did not sleep with her** - That is, “he did not have sexual relations with her.” He kept her a virgin until the birth of the baby.

# The Trip to Bethlehem 23-04

**When the time was near for Mary to give birth**, the **Roman government** told everyone to go **for a census** to the town where their ancestors had lived. **Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was **David** whose hometown was Bethlehem.

## Translation Notes:

* **When the time was near for Mary to give birth** - That is, “When it was near the end of Mary’s pregnancy.”
* **Roman government** - Rome had conquered and ruled over Israel at this time.
* **for a census** - That is, “to be counted for the government record” or, “so that the government could write their names on a list” or, “to be counted by the government.” This census was probably made for the purpose of taxing the people.

# The Birth of Jesus 23-05

When they arrived in **Bethlehem**, there was **no place to stay**. The only room they could find was a **place where animals stayed**. The baby was born there and his mother laid him in a **feeding trough**, since they did not have a bed for him. They named him **Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **no place to stay** - That is, “no usual place to stay.” Because Bethlehem was so crowded at that time, the usual rooms for guests were already full of people.
* **place where animals stayed** - This was a place for sheltering animals, not a place where people lived. Translate this with a term that would normally be used for a place where animals were kept.
* **feeding trough** - That is, “animal feed box” or, “wooden or stone box for feeding animals.” The box could have been filled with hay to provide a padded surface for the baby to lie on.

# The Angel and the Shepherds 23-06

That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field **guarding their flocks**. Suddenly, **a shining angel** appeared to them, and **they were terrified**. The angel said, “**Do not be afraid**, because I have some good news for you. The **Messiah**, the **Master**, has been born in **Bethlehem**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **guarding their flocks** - A “flock” is a group of sheep. The shepherds were caring for their sheep, and protecting them from harm or theft.
* **a shining angel** - This could also be translated as, “an angel surrounded by a bright light.” The shining light would have seemed even brighter in contrast to the darkness of the night.
* **they were terrified** - The appearance of the supernatural angel was extremely frightening.
* **Do not be afraid** - This often means, “stop being afraid.” The shepherds were very afraid when they saw the angel so he was telling them they did not need to be afraid.

# The Angels Praised God 23-07

“Go search for the baby, and you will find him **wrapped in pieces of cloth** and lying in a feeding trough.” Suddenly, the skies were **filled with angels** praising **God**, saying, “**Glory to God** in **heaven** and **peace on earth** to **the people he favors**!”

## Translation Notes:

* + **wrapped in pieces of cloth** - The custom of that time was to tightly wrap newborn babies in long strips of cloth. It may be necessary to say, “wrapped in long strips of cloth, in the customary way.”
* **feeding trough** - That is, “animal feeding box.” Also see how you translated this in
* **filled with angels** - This means that there were so many angels that they seemed to fill the sky.
* **Glory to God** - This can also be translated as, “Let us all give glory to God!” or, “Our God deserves all glory and honor!” or, “We all give glory to God!”
* **peace on earth** - Another way to say this would be, “may there be peace on earth.”
* **the people he favors** - This might be translated as, “people that God looks upon with favor, delight, or good will.”

# The Shepherds Visited Jesus 23-08

The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where **Jesus** was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the **angel** had told them. They were very excited. **Mary** was very happy, too. The shepherds returned to the fields where their sheep were, **praising** **God** for **all they had heard and seen**.

## Translation Notes:

* **all they had heard and seen** - That is, “for everything they had heard and seen.” This included the glorious angels and their amazing message, as well as seeing the newborn Messiah himself.

# The Wise Men Visited Jesus 23-09

**Some time later**, **wise men** from countries far to the east saw an **unusual star** in the sky. **They realized** it meant a new **king of the Jews** had been born. So, they traveled a great distance to see this king. They came to **Bethlehem** and found **the house** where **Jesus** and his parents were staying.

## Translation Notes:

* **Some time later** - It is not clear how long it was after the birth of Jesus before the wise men saw the star, but it may have taken as long as two years for them to prepare for the trip and then travel to Bethlehem.
* **wise men** - The “wise men” were probably astrologers who studied the stars. They may also have had access to the Old Testament prophets’ writings that predicted the birth of the Messiah.
* **unusual star** - The star that they noticed was not a normal star. It was something that appeared at the time of Jesus’ birth.
* **They realized** - Some languages may add, “From their studies, these scholars realized.”
* **the house** - They were no longer staying in the place for animals where he was born.

# Worship for the Baby 23-10

When the **wise men** saw **Jesus** with his mother, they **bowed down** and **worshiped** him. They gave Jesus **expensive** gifts. Then they returned home.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 1; Luke 2*

## Translation Notes:

* **wise men** - See how you translated this term in - **bowed down**
* That is, “bowed low to the ground.” At that time, this was the customary way of showing great respect or reverence.
* **expensive** – That is, “very valuable.” - *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# John the Prophet 24-01

**John**, the son of **Zechariah** and Elizabeth, grew up and became a **prophet**. He lived in the **wilderness**, ate **wild honey** and **locusts**, and wore **clothes made from camel hair**.

## Translation Notes:

* **wilderness** - That is, “the desert” or, “a remote, desert-like place.” There were few people living out in this area.
* **wild honey** - This honey was the natural product of bees in the wilderness; it was not cultivated by people. If that is what people would understand by the word “honey,” you may not need to call it “wild.”
* **locusts** - These were large, hopping insects with wings, like very large grasshoppers. Some people who live in the desert eat them.
* **camel hair** - A camel is an animal that has very rough hair. People could make clothing out of it. This could be translated as “rough animal hair.”
* **clothes made from camel hair** - That is, “coarse clothes made of camel hair.” These clothes would not quickly wear out in the wilderness as other clothes would.

# A Call to Repent 24-02

Many people came out to the **wilderness** to listen to **John**. He **preached** to them, saying, “**Repent**, for **the kingdom of God is near**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **wilderness** - See how you translated this word in - **Repent**
* It might be better to say, “Repent from your sins.” - **the kingdom of God is near** - That is, “the kingdom of God is ready to appear” or, “the kingdom of God will arrive soon.” This refers to God’s ruling over people. This can also be translated as, “God’s reign is about to begin” or, “God will soon rule over us as king.”

# A Baptism of Repentance 24-03

When people heard **John’s** message, many of them **repented from their sins**, and John **baptized** them. Many **religious leaders** also came to be baptized by John, but they **did not repent** or **confess their sins**.

## Translation Notes:

* **repented from their sins** - This could also be translated as, “repented concerning their sins” or, “changed their minds about their sins” or, “turned away from their sins.”
* **did not repent** - That is, “did not turn away from their sins.”
* **confess their sins** - To confess is to acknowledge that something is true. These leaders did not want to acknowledge that they had sinned. This may be translated as, “confess that they had sinned.”

# Preparing the Way 24-04

**John** said to the **religious leaders**, “**You poisonous snakes**! **Repent** and change your behavior. **Every tree that does not bear good fruit** **will be cut down and thrown into the fire**.” **John fulfilled** what the **prophets** said, “**See**, I send **my messenger** **ahead of you**, who will **prepare your way**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **You poisonous snakes** - This could be translated as, “You are like lying poisonous snakes!” John was calling them poisonous snakes because they were dangerous and deceptive.
* **Every tree that does not bear good fruit** - John is not really talking about trees. This is an expression that compares good fruit to good actions and attitudes that come from God.
* **will be cut down and thrown into the fire** – This means, “will be judged and punished by God.”
* **John fulfilled** - That is, “John was doing” what the prophet said God’s messenger would do.
* **See** - This could be translated as “Look and see” or, “Pay attention!”
* **my messenger** - That is, “I, Yahweh, will send my messenger.” In some languages it would be more natural to use an indirect quote for this sentence, such as: “what the prophet Isaiah predicted when he said that God would send his messenger.”
* **ahead of you** - In this phrase, the word “you” refers to the Messiah.
* **prepare your way** - God’s messenger will prepare the people to listen to the Messiah.

# Not the Messiah 24-05

Some **Jews** asked **John** if he was the **Messiah**. John replied, “I am not the Messiah, but there is someone coming after me. **He is so great** that I am **not even worthy to untie his sandals**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **He is so great** - This could be translated as, “He is so important.”
* **not even worthy to untie his sandals** - In other words, “compared to him, I am not important enough to do even the most menial task for him.” Untying sandals was a very low job, something a slave would do.

# Jesus Is the Lamb of God 24-06

The next day, **Jesus** came to be **baptized** by **John**. When John saw him, he said, “Look! **There is** the **Lamb of God** who **will take away** the **sin of the world**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **There is** – For some languages this would be, “Here is” or, “That man is.”
* **Lamb of God** - This could also be translated as, “the Lamb from God” or, “the sacrifice Lamb that God has provided.” Jesus was the perfect sacrifice for sin that God promised to provide. He fulfills the image that was presented by the sacrifice of lambs in the Old Testament.
* **will take away** - The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.
* **sin of the world** - That is, “the sin of the people in the world.”

# John Baptized Jesus 24-07

**John** said to **Jesus**, “**I am not worthy to baptize you**. You should baptize me instead.” But Jesus said, “You should baptize me, because **it is the right thing to do**.” So John baptized him, even though Jesus had never **sinned**.

## Translation Notes:

* **I am not worthy to baptize you** - This could be translated as, “I am not good enough to baptize you” or, “I am sinful, so I should not baptize you.”
* **it is the right thing to do** - This might also be translated as, “it is the proper thing to do” or, “this is what God wants me to do.”

# You Are My Beloved Son 24-08

When **Jesus** came up out of the water after being **baptized**, the **Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove** and came down and rested on him. At the same time, God’s voice spoke from **heaven**, saying, “You are **my Son whom I love**, and I am very pleased with you.”

## Translation Notes:

* **my Son whom I love** - Make sure the translation of this does not sound like there was another son. It may be necessary to say, “You are my Son. I love you very much and am very pleased with you.”

# Jesus Is the Son of God 24-09

**God had told John**, “The **Holy Spirit** **will come down and rest on** someone you **baptize**. That person is the **Son of God**.” There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw **Jesus** the **Son** and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 3; Mark 1:9-11; Luke 3:1-23*

## Translation Notes:

* **God had told John** - That is, “Before this, God had told John” or, “Before Jesus came to be baptized, God had told John.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Satan Tempted Jesus 25-01

Immediately after **Jesus** was **baptized**, **the Holy Spirit led him** out into **the wilderness**, where he **fasted** for **forty days and forty nights**. Then **Satan** came to Jesus and **tempted him to sin**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the Holy Spirit led him** – That is, “the Holy Spirit guided him” or, “the Holy Spirit prompted him to go.”
* **the wilderness** - This could also be translated as, “the desert” or, “a remote, barren place with few people.” This place probably had very few trees or other plants, so most people would not be able to live there.
* **forty days and forty nights** - This means “forty days, both during the day and during the night.” Make sure the translation of this phrase does not sound like a period of eighty days.
* **tempted him to sin** - Since Jesus did not sin, make sure you use a word that does not imply that Satan succeeded in convincing Jesus to sin. This phrase could also be translated as, “tried to convince him to sin.”

# The First Temptation 25-02

**Satan** **tempted** **Jesus** by saying, “If you are the **Son of God**, **turn these rocks into bread** so you can eat!”

## Translation Notes:

* **turn these rocks into bread** - This may also be translated as, “make these rocks become bread” or, “supernaturally change these rocks into bread.”
* **bread** – This could be translated as, “food” for languages where bread is not a common food. In the Jews’ culture, bread was the main food.

# God’s Word Gives Life 25-03

**Jesus** replied, “It is written in **God’s word,** ‘People do not only need **bread** in order to live, **but they need every word that God speaks!**’”

## Translation Notes:

* **bread** – Make sure that you use the same word to translate “bread” here as you did in
* **but they need every word that God speaks!** - Another way to translate this would be, “Rather, people need to listen to and obey everything God says” or, “Rather, people have real life by believing and obeying what God says.”

# The Second Temptation 25-04

Then **Satan** took **Jesus** to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the **Son of God**, **throw yourself down**, because **it is written**, ‘**God** will command his **angels** to carry you **so your foot does not hit a stone**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **throw yourself down** - That is, “jump off this building to the ground.”
* **it is written** – That is, “a prophet of God wrote long ago.”
* **so your foot does not hit a stone** - This means, “so that you will not be hurt at all; not even your foot will be injured on a stone.” It could also be translated as, “so that even your foot will not strike against a stone; you will not be injured at all.”

# Do Not Test God 25-05

But **Jesus** replied to **Satan** by quoting from the **Scriptures.** He said, “\*\*In God’s Word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the Lord your God\*\*.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **In God’s Word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the Lord, your God.’”** – This could be translated as an indirect quote: “God commands us in his Word that we should not test the Lord our God.”
* **Do not test the Lord your God** - This could be translated as, “Do not make the Lord your God prove himself to you” or, “Do not make the Lord your God prove that he is good.”
* **Lord your God** – That is, “Yahweh, your God” or, “Yahweh, who is God and has authority over you.”

# The Third Temptation 25-06

Then **Satan** showed **Jesus** all the **kingdoms of the world** and all **their glory** and said, “**I will give you all this** if you bow down and **worship** me.”

## Translation Notes:

* **kingdoms of the world** - This refers to all the greatest cities, countries, and other territories of the world.
* **their glory** - That is, “their power and wealth.” - **I will give you all this** - This could be translated as, “I will give you all the wealth and power of these kingdoms” or, “I will make you the ruler over all these countries, cities and people.”

# Worship Only God 25-07

**Jesus** replied, “**Get away from me**, **Satan**! \*\*In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him\*\*.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **Get away from me** - This may also be translated as, “Leave me” or, “Leave me alone.”
* **In God’s word he commands his people, “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him”** – This could be written as an indirect quote, “In God’s word, he commands us that we must worship and serve only the Lord God, who rules over us.”
* **Lord your God** – Translate this phrase the same way as you did in
* **and only serve him** – Another way to say this would be, “He is the only one you should serve.”

# Angels Ministered to Jesus 25-08

**Jesus** **did not give in to** **Satan’s** **temptations**, so Satan left him. Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 4:1-11; Mark 1:12-13; Luke 4:1-13*

## Translation Notes:

* **did not give in to** - This could be translated as, “did not do the things that Satan was tempting him to do.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Jesus in Galilee 26-01

**After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned** **in the power of the Holy Spirit** to the region of **Galilee** where he lived. Jesus **went from place to place teaching**. **Everyone** **spoke well of him**.

## Translation Notes:

* **After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned** – You may prefer to make this into two sentences and say, “Jesus did not do the wrong things Satan tried to get him to do and so defeated him. After that, Jesus returned.” The word “overcoming” can also be translated with “resisting” or, “rejecting” or, “refusing.”
* **in the power of the Holy Spirit** - This may be translated as, “as the power of the Holy Spirit worked through him” or, “and the Holy Spirit was powerfully guiding him.”
* **went from place to place teaching** – That is, he “traveled to different towns and other places and taught the people there.”
* **Everyone** - That is, “Everyone who knew him or heard about him.” - **spoke well of him** - That is, “said good things about him.”

# Jesus in Nazareth 26-02

**Jesus** went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the **place of worship** so that he would read from it. They handed him the **scroll of the prophet Isaiah**. Jesus **opened up the scroll** and read part of it to the people.

## Translation Notes:

* **place of worship** – That is, “the building where the Jews gathered to worship God.” This can also be translated as, “worship building.”
* **scroll** - A scroll was a long sheet of paper or leather that was rolled up and had writing on it.
* **the scroll of the prophet Isaiah** – That is, “the scroll that had the words that the prophet Isaiah had written.” Isaiah had written on a scroll hundreds of years before. This was a copy of that scroll.
* **opened up the scroll** – This could be translated as, “rolled open the scroll” or, “unrolled the scroll.”

# Jesus Read the Scriptures 26-03

Jesus read, “**God** has given me his **Spirit** so that I can **proclaim good news to the poor**, **freedom to captives**, **recovery of sight for the blind**, and **release to the oppressed**. This is **the year of the Lord’s favor**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **proclaim good news to the poor** - That is, “to tell poor and needy people the good message that God will help them.”
* **freedom to captives** - That is, “to tell people who are wrongfully in prison that they will be released.”
* **recovery of sight for the blind** - This could be translated as, “that those who are blind will receive their sight.”
* **release to the oppressed** - That is, “freedom for those who are mistreated in life.”
* **the year of the Lord’s favor** - This may be translated as, “the time when the Lord will be merciful to us” or, “the time when the Lord will be very gracious to us.”

# The Prophesy about Jesus 26-04

Then **Jesus** sat down. Everybody watched him closely. They knew the passage of **scripture** that he had just read referred to the **Messiah**. Jesus said, “**The words I just read to you are happening right now**.” All the people were **amazed**. “**Isn’t this the son of Joseph**?” they said.

## Translation Notes:

* **The words I just read to you are happening right now** - Other ways to translate this would be, “The words you just heard me read are being fulfilled right now” or, “Today the words I read to you came true as you heard them.”
* **amazed** - Translate the word “amazed” with a term that means that they were surprised, shocked, and confused about how this could be possible.
* **Isn’t this the son of Joseph?** –This could also be translated as, “This man is only the son of Joseph!” or, “Everyone knows he is just Joseph’s son!” The people were not asking if he was Joseph’s son or not. They were wondering how he could be the Messiah since they thought he was only the son of an ordinary man.

# The Ministry of Elijah 26-05

Then **Jesus** said, “It is **true** that **no prophet is accepted in his own hometown**. During the time of the prophet **Elijah**, there were many widows in **Israel**. But when it did not rain for three and a half years, **God** did not send Elijah to help a widow from Israel, but rather to a widow from a different nation.”

## Translation Notes:

* **no prophet is accepted in his hometown** - This phrase means, “people do not recognize the authority of a prophet that has grown up among them.”

# The Ministry of Elisha 26-06

**Jesus** continued saying, “And during the time of the **prophet** **Elisha**, there were many people in **Israel** with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, **a commander** of Israel’s enemies.” The people who were listening to Jesus were **Jews**. So when they heard him say this, **they were furious at him**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Elisha** - Elisha was God’s prophet who came after Elijah. Like Elijah, Elisha confronted Israelite kings who were sinning against God and he did miracles that God gave him power to do.
* **a commander** – That is, “a military leader.” - **they were furious at him** - The Jews did not want to hear that God had blessed any people group besides themselves, so they were very angry at what Jesus said.

# The Attempt to Kill Jesus 26-07

The people of **Nazareth** dragged **Jesus** out of the **place of worship** and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him. **But Jesus walked through the crowd** and left the town of Nazareth.

## Translation Notes:

* **place of worship** - That is, “the building where the Jewish people gathered to worship God.” This can also be translated as “worship building.” See how you translated it in
* **But Jesus walked through the crowd** - “But” could be translated with a strong contrast word or phrase such as “But instead” or, “However” to show that the people were not able to do to Jesus what they had planned to do.

# Jesus Healed the Sick 26-08

Then **Jesus** **went throughout the region of Galilee**, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.

## Translation Notes:

* **went throughout the region of Galilee** - That is, “all around in Galilee” or, “from place to place in Galilee.”

# Jesus Removed the Demons 26-09

Many people **who had demons in them** were brought to **Jesus**. **At Jesus’ command**, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the **Son of God**!” The crowds of people were amazed and **worshiped** **God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **who had demons in them** –That is, “who were controlled by evil spirits.”
* **When Jesus commanded them** - This could also be translated as, “When Jesus gave the command to them.”

# The Twelve Disciples 26-10

Then **Jesus** chose twelve men **who were called his apostles**. The apostles traveled with Jesus and **learned from him**.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 4:12-25; Mark 1:14-15, 35-39; 3:13-21; Luke 4:14-30, 38-44*

## Translation Notes:

* **learned from him** – That is, “learned from what he taught them” or, “learned from everything he said and did.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Lawyer’s Question 27-01

**One day**, an **expert in the Jewish law** came to **Jesus** **to test him**, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do **to inherit** **eternal life**?” Jesus answered, “**What is written in God’s law**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **expert in the Jewish law** - This man was someone who studied and taught the laws God had given the Israelites, as well as other Jewish laws.
* **to test him** - That is, “to see if Jesus would give a good answer.”
* **to inherit eternal life** - That is, “to have life with God forever” or, “so that God will give me life with him forever” or, “to receive eternal life from God.” The law expert was asking how he could be worthy to receive eternal life as an inheritance from God the Father.
* **eternal life** - This refers to life forever with God after the mortal body dies. See the key term page for eternal life.
* **What is written in God’s law?** - That is, “What is written in God’s law about this?” Jesus asked this question because he wanted the man to think about what God’s law really teaches.

# Obey the Commandments 27-02

The **law expert** replied that **God’s law** says, “**Love the Lord your God** **with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind**. And **love your neighbor as yourself**.” **Jesus** answered, “You are correct! Do this and you will **live**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **law expert** - That is, “an expert in the Jewish law.” See how you translated this term in
* **Love the Lord your God** – You may choose to say, “We must love the Lord our God.” Make sure it does not sound like the man is commanding Jesus. Rather, he is quoting what God’s law commands people to do.
* **with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind** - That is, “with your whole self” or, “with every part of yourself.” In some languages this might be translated as, “with all your liver, breath, strength, and thoughts.” The focus is not on each of these parts, but on all of us. Use the concepts in your language that make up the whole person.
* **heart** - The heart refers to the part of a person that has desires and emotions.
* **soul** - The soul refers to the nonphysical, spiritual part of a person.
* **strength** - Strength refers to the physical body and all of its abilities.
* **mind** - The mind refers to the part of a person that thinks, plans, and has ideas.
* **neighbor** - The word “neighbor” normally refers to a person who lives near us. The Jews applied the term to someone who was neither a close relative nor a foreigner or enemy.
* **love your neighbor as yourself** – That is, “love your neighbor to the same extent that you love yourself.”

# Who Is My Neighbor? 27-03

But the **law expert** wanted to prove that he was **righteous**, so he asked, “**Who is my neighbor?**”

## Translation Notes:

* **law expert** - That is, “an expert in the Jewish law.” See how you translated this term in
* **Who is my neighbor?** – This could also be translated as, “What do you mean by ‘neighbor’?” or, “Which people are my neighbors?” He knew that he did not love everyone, and was asking which people he needed to love.

# The Jewish Traveler 27-04

**Jesus** answered the **law expert** by telling a story. “There was a **Jewish** man who was traveling along the road **from Jerusalem to Jericho**.”

## Translation Notes:

* (The cloud-like frame around this picture indicates that Jesus is telling a story, and not necessarily explaining a historical event.)
* **law expert** - See how you translated this term in - **from Jerusalem to Jericho** – In some languages you could translate this as, “from the city of Jerusalem to the city of Jericho” or, “from Jerusalem City to Jericho City.”

# The Robbers 27-05

“While the man was traveling, he was attacked by a group of robbers. They took **everything he had** and beat him until he was almost dead. Then they went away.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **everything he had** – That is, “everything he had with him, including the clothes he was wearing.”

# The Priest 27-06

“Soon after that, a **Jewish** **priest** **happened to walk down** that same road. When this **religious leader** saw the man who had been robbed and beaten, he moved to the other side of the road, **ignored the man** who needed help, and **kept on going**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **happened to walk down** – That is, “happened to be traveling along.” For some languages it may be necessary to use a word like “travel” rather than “walk” since the priest was not just walking on the road but was traveling to get to another city.
* **ignored the man** - That is, “did not help the man” or, “showed no concern for the man.”
* **kept on going** - That is, “continued traveling down the road.”

# The Levite 27-07

“Not long after that, a Levite **came down the road**. (**Levites were a tribe of Jews** who helped the **priests** at the \*\*Temple The Levite also crossed over to the other side of the road and **ignored** the man who had been robbed and beaten.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **came down the road** – That is, “was traveling down that same road.”
* **Levites were a tribe of Jews** – That is, “Levites were from the Israelite tribe of Levi” or, “Levites were from the Israelite clan of Levi.”
* **ignored** – That is, “did not help.”

# The Samaritan 27-08

“The next person to **walk down** that road was a **Samaritan**. (Samaritans were the descendants of **Jews** who had married people from other nations. Samaritans and Jews hated each other.) But when the Samaritan saw the Jewish man, he felt very strong compassion for him. So he cared for him and bandaged his wounds.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **walk down** – That is, “travel along.” These people were traveling from one city to another. Make sure that it does not sound like they were just taking a walk.

# Help for the Victim 27-09

“The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto **his own donkey** and took him to a **roadside inn** **where he took care of him**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **his own donkey** – Make sure it is clear that “his” refers to the Samaritan.
* **roadside inn** – That is, “a lodging place.” This is a place where travelers could get food and stay overnight.
* **where he took care of him** – This could also be translated as, “where he continued to take care of him.”

# Generous Help 27-10

“The next day, the **Samaritan** needed to **continue his journey**. He gave some money to the person **in charge of** the inn and said, ‘**Take care of him**, and if you spend any more money than this, I will **repay those expenses** when I return.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **continue his journey** – This could be translated as, “continue traveling toward his destination.”
* **in charge of** – That is, “who managed.” It could be that this person also owned this lodging place.
* **Take care of him** – For some languages it may be preferable to say, “Please take care of him” in order for it to be clear that this was a polite request, not an order.
* **repay those expenses** – This could also be translated as, “repay you” or, “repay that money” or, “repay it.”

# Do the Same 27-11

Then **Jesus** asked the **law expert**, “What do you think? Which one of **the three men** **was a neighbor** to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.” Jesus told him, “**You go and do the same**.”

*A Bible story from: Luke 10:25-37*

## Translation Notes:

* **law expert** - That is, “an expert in the Jewish law.” See how you translated this term in
* **the three men** - The three men were the priest, the Levite, and the Samaritan.
* **neighbor** - Jesus is using the word “neighbor” in a broader sense than in “Neighbor” here refers to anyone that we meet who needs our help.
* **was a neighbor** - This can also be translated as, “behaved as a neighbor” or, “was a friend” or, “acted in a loving way”.
* **You go and do** – That is, “You, too, should go and do” or, “Now you must do.” Jesus was commanding the law expert to do as the Samaritan did.
* **do the same** – That is, “love others, even your enemies.” Make sure it does not sound like “the same” is only referring to helping a wounded man.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# What Must I Do? 28-01

**One day**, a **rich young ruler** **came up to Jesus** and asked him, “**Good teacher**, what must I do **to have eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “**Why do you call me ‘good’**? **There is only one who is good, and that is God**. But if you want to have eternal life, **obey** **God’s laws**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **rich young ruler** - This man was already a rich and powerful political official, even though he was still young.
* **came up to Jesus** - That is, “approached Jesus.” - **Good teacher** - That is, “righteous teacher.” He was not saying that Jesus was simply a skilled teacher.
* **to have eternal life** - That is, “to receive eternal life” or, “to live with God forever.” Also consider how “eternal life” was translated on and see the note about that there.
* **Why do you call me ‘good’** - Jesus is not denying that he is God. Rather, he is asking if the ruler understands that Jesus is God.
* **There is only one who is good, and that is God** - Another way to say this would be, “The only one who is truly good is God” or, “God is the only one who is truly good.”

# God’s Commandments 28-02

“**Which ones do I need to obey?**” he asked. **Jesus** replied, “Do not murder. Do not commit **adultery**. Do not steal. Do not lie. Honor your father and mother, and **love** your neighbor **as you love yourself**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Which ones do I need to obey?** - That is, “Which laws will be enough for me to receive eternal life?”
* **as you love yourself** - That is, “as much as you love yourself” or, “to the same degree that you love yourself.”

# What Else Must I Do? 28-03

But the young man said, “I have **obeyed** all these **laws** **ever since I was a boy**. **What do I still need to do** in order to live forever?” **Jesus** looked at him and **loved him**.

## Translation Notes:

* **ever since I was a boy** – Another way to say this would be, “from the time I was a child until now.”
* **What do I still need to do?** - That is, “What else do I need to do” or, “What do I need to do in addition to these?”
* **loved him** - Jesus had compassion on him. Choose a word for love that is consistent with the kind of love God has for people.

# Sell Everything 28-04

**Jesus** answered, “If **you** want to be **perfect**, then go and sell **everything you own** and give the money to the poor, and you will have **treasure in heaven**. Then come and follow me.”

## Translation Notes:

* **you** - If your language has different words for “you” depending on the number of people intended, use the singular form. Jesus was addressing this command to this one man.
* **perfect** - That is, “completely righteous.” - **everything you own** - That is, “all of your possessions.” - **treasure** - This could also be translated as, “riches” or, “great wealth.”
* **in heaven** - This could also be translated as, “located in heaven when you arrive there.” This treasure will exist “there and then,” as opposed to the wealth that Jesus asked the young man to give up “here and now.”

# Not Willing to Obey 28-05

When the young man **heard what Jesus said**, he became very sad, because he was very rich and did not want to give away all the things he possessed. He turned and went away from Jesus.

## Translation Notes:

* **heard what Jesus said** – That is, “heard Jesus tell him to give away what he owned.”

# The Camel and the Needle 28-06

Then **Jesus** said to his **disciples**, “It is extremely hard for rich people to **enter into the kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a **camel** to go through the **eye of a needle** than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”

## Translation Notes:

* **enter the kingdom of God** - This can also be translated as, “become a citizen in God’s kingdom.”
* **camel** - Camels are very large animals that are often used to carry heavy loads. If camels are not known in your language area, a phrase such as, “very large animal” or, “beast of burden” could be used. If you choose to substitute the name of some other large animal, make sure that the animal would have been known by the people Jesus was talking to, such as, “ox” or, “donkey.”
* **eye of a needle** - This refers to the tiny hole in the end of a sewing needle. The idea of something as large as a camel going through the eye of a needle is intended to represent something that is impossible.

# Who Can Be Saved? 28-07

When the **disciples** heard what Jesus said, they were **shocked** and said, “Then **who can be saved**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **shocked** - That is, “greatly astonished.” - **who can be saved** - This could also be translated as, “If even rich people cannot be saved, how can anyone else be saved?” Many people believed that being rich was a sign of God’s favor.
* **saved** - Here it refers to being saved from God’s judgment and condemnation for sin and being allowed to be a citizen in God’s kingdom.

# All Things Are Possible 28-08

**Jesus** looked at the **disciples** and said, “**With people this is impossible**, but **with God, all things are possible**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **With people this is impossible** - That is, “It is not possible for people to do this” or, “Mere humans cannot save themselves.”
* **with God, all things are possible** - This could also be translated as, “God is able to do anything, even save a rich person” or, “God is able to do impossible things, so he can save even a rich person.”

# What Is Our Reward? 28-09

**Peter** said to **Jesus**, “We have **left everything** and followed you. **What will be our reward?**”

## Translation Notes:

* **left everything** - That is, “left everything behind” or, “given up everything we owned.”
* **What will be our reward?** - Another way to say this is, “What reward will we receive” or, “How will we be rewarded?” or, “What will God give us as a reward?” It may also be necessary to add, “because we have done this?”

# The First and the Last 28-10

**Jesus** answered, “Everyone who **has left** houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property **for my sake**, will receive **100 times more** and will also receive **eternal life**. But **many who are first will be last**, and **many who are last will be first**.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 19:16-30; Mark 10:17-31; Luke 18:18-30*

## Translation Notes:

* **has left** – That is, “has left behind” or, “has given up” or, “has counted as less important than God.”
* **for my sake** - This may also be translated as, “because of me” or, “on my account.”
* **100 times more** - That is, “very much more than he had before.”
* **many who are first will be last** - That is, “many people who are important now, will not be important then.”
* **many who are last will be first** - That is, “many people who are considered to not be very important on earth will be considered very important in heaven” or, “Many people who are considered now to be of little value on earth will be highly valued in heaven.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# How Many Times? 29-01

**One day**, **Peter** asked **Jesus**, “**Master**, how many times should I **forgive** **my brother** when he **sins against me**? **Up to** seven times?” Jesus said, “**Not seven times, but seventy times seven!**” **By this, Jesus meant** that we should always forgive. Then Jesus told **this story**.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **my brother** - This term sometimes included people who were not actually siblings, but who shared another very strong connection such as religion, ethnic background, etc.
* **sins against me** - This could also be translated as, “does something wrong against me.”
* **Up to** - That is, “as many as.” - **Not seven times, but seventy times seven!** - This could be translated as, “You should not forgive only seven times, rather you should forgive seventy times seven times.” Jesus was not talking about an exact number. He was saying that we should forgive people every time they sin against us.
* **By this, Jesus meant** – That is, “When Jesus said this he meant.” - **this story** - That is, “the following story.”

# The Huge Debt 29-02

Jesus said, “**The kingdom of God is like** **a king who** wanted to **settle accounts with his servants**. One of his servants owed a huge debt worth 200,000 years’ wages.”

## Translation Notes:

* **The kingdom of God is like** - Another way to say this would be, “God’s rule over people is like” or, “The way God rules people can be compared to.”
* **is like a king who** - This could be translated as, “is like the kingdom of a king who” or, “can be compared with the rule of a king who.”
* **settle accounts with his servants** - That is, “collect the debts his servants owed him” or, “collect the money his servants had borrowed from him.”

# Not Able to Repay 29-03

“Since the **servant** could not **pay the debt**, the **king** said, ‘Sell this man and his family as **slaves** **to make payment on his debt**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **pay the debt** - That is, “pay back the money he owed to the king.”
* **to make payment on his debt** - This could be translated as, “and use the money received from selling them to pay part of what he owes me.”

# The Debt Is Canceled 29-04

“The **servant** **fell on his knees** **before the king** and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’ The king **felt pity** for the servant, so he **canceled all of his debt** and let him go.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **fell on his knees** - That is, “quickly knelt down on the ground.” This was a way to show his humility and his desire for the king to help him. Make sure it doesn’t sound like he fell down accidentally.
* **before the king** - This means, “in front of the king.” - **felt pity** - That is, “felt compassion for” or, “felt sorry for.” The king knew that the servant and his family would suffer greatly if they were sold into slavery.
* **canceled all of his debt** - This can be translated as, “said that the servant did not need to pay back any of the money that he owed the king.”

# The Small Debt 29-05

“But when the **servant** went out from the king, he found a **fellow servant** who owed him a debt worth four months’ wages. The servant grabbed his fellow servant and said, ‘Pay me the money that you owe me!’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **fellow servant** - This refers to another man who was also a servant of the king.

# To Prison 29-06

“The **fellow servant** **fell on his knees** and said, ‘Please be patient with me, and I will pay the full amount that I owe you.’ But instead, the servant **threw his fellow servant into prison** until he could pay the debt.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **fellow servant** - Translate this phrase in the same way as in
* **fell on his knees** - This phrase has the same meaning as in - **threw his fellow servant into prison** - This could also be translated as, “had the man put into prison.” The word “threw” is figurative and means it was done in a forceful way.

# The King Heard 29-07

“Some other **servants** saw **what had happened** and **were greatly disturbed**. They went to the **king** and told him **everything**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **what had happened** - That is, “that the servant had refused to cancel the other servant’s debt and had put him into prison.”
* **were greatly disturbed** - That is, “deeply grieved” or, “very distressed.”
* **everything**–That is, “they told the king what the servant had done to his fellow servant.”

# The Wicked Servant 29-08

“The **king** **called the servant** and said, ‘You wicked servant! I **forgave** your debt because you **begged me**. **You should have done the same**.’ The king was so angry that he **threw** the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **called the servant** - That is, “commanded the servant to come to him” or, “ordered his guards to bring the servant to him.”
* **begged me** – This could be translated as, “pleaded with me” or, “urgently asked me to be merciful.”
* **You should have done the same** - That is, “You should have forgiven the man who owed you, just as I forgave you.”
* **threw** - That is, “commanded his guards to put.” Consider how “threw” was translated in frame

# Forgive Your Brother 29-09

**Then Jesus said**, “**This** is what **my heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not **forgive** **your brother** **from your heart**.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 18:21-35*

## Translation Notes:

* **Then Jesus said** – Some languages may add, “to his disciples.” - **This** - “This” refers back to the way the king punished the unforgiving servant in
* **my heavenly Father** - That is, “my Father in heaven.” Jesus is expressing his unique, personal relationship to God the Father.
* **your brother** - See how you translated this in - **from your heart** - That is, “with sincerity” or, “truly” or, “genuinely” or, “honestly.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# A Quiet Place 30-01

**Jesus** sent his **apostles** to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages. When they returned to where Jesus was, they told him what they had done. Then Jesus invited them to go with him to a **quiet place** across the lake to rest for a while. So, they got into a boat and went to the other side of the lake.

## Translation Notes:

* **returned** - This could also be translated as, “returned to Jesus” or, “returned to where Jesus was.”
* **quiet place** - This refers to a place with few people where they could be by themselves.

# The Crowd Followed Jesus 30-02

But there were many people who saw **Jesus** and the **disciples** **leave in the boat**. These people ran along the shore of the lake to get to the other side ahead of them. So when Jesus and the disciples **arrived**, a large group of people was already there, waiting for them.

## Translation Notes:

* **leave in the boat** - Some languages may need to add, “to cross the lake.”
* **arrived** - That is, “got to the other side of the lake” or, “got there.”

# Jesus Taught and Healed People 30-03

The crowd had over 5,000 men in it, **not counting the women and children**. **Jesus** felt great compassion towards the people. **To Jesus**, these people were **like sheep without a shepherd**. So he taught them and **healed** the people among them who were sick.

## Translation Notes:

* **not counting the women and children** - That is, “not counting the women and children who were with them” or, “and there were also women and children in addition to the men.” Another way to translate this could also be, “in addition, there were many women and children.”
* **To Jesus** – That is, “Jesus knew that” or, “Jesus understood that.”
* **like sheep without a shepherd** - This could be translated as, “vulnerable and lost, just like sheep are when they have no shepherd to take care of them.”

# The People Were Hungry 30-04

**Late in the day**, the **disciples** told **Jesus**, “It is late and there are no towns nearby. **Send the people away** so they can go get something to eat.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Late in the day** - This could also be translated as, “When it was almost evening.”
* **Send the people away** - This could be translated as, “Please tell the people to go to a town” or, “Shouldn’t you tell the people to go somewhere?” or, “Let the people go to a town.” Make sure it sounds like a polite request, not an order.

# Five Loaves and Two Fish 30-05

But **Jesus** said to the **disciples**, “You give them something to eat!” They responded, “**How can we do that?** We only have five loaves of bread and two small fish.”

## Translation Notes:

* **How can we do that?** – This could be translated as, “We cannot do that!” or, “It is impossible to do that!” The disciples were not asking an actual question. Rather, they were strongly expressing that they did not think this was possible.

# Preparation for the Meal 30-06

**Jesus** told his **disciples** to tell the people in the crowd to sit down on the grass, in groups of fifty people each.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Jesus Blessed the Food 30-07

Then **Jesus** took the five loaves of bread and the two fish, looked up to **heaven**, and thanked **God** for the food.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Everyone Ate 30-08

Then **Jesus** **broke the bread and the fish** into pieces. He gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The disciples kept passing out the food, and **it never ran out**! All the people ate and **were satisfied**.

## Translation Notes:

* **broke the bread and the fish** - That is, “tore the bread and the fish.”
* **it never ran out** – Another way to say this would be, “there was always more left.”
* **were satisfied** – That is, “were no longer hungry” or, “were not hungry any more.”

# More than Enough 30-09

After that, the **disciples** collected the food that had not been eaten and it was enough to fill twelve baskets! All the food came from the five loaves of bread and two fish.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 14:13-21; Mark 6:31-44; Luke 9:10-17; John 6:5-15*

## Translation Notes:

* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Jesus Prayed Alone 31-01

Then **Jesus** told the **disciples** to get into the boat and sail to the other side of the lake while **he dismissed the crowd**. After Jesus had sent the crowd away, he went up on a **mountainside** to **pray**. Jesus was there all alone, and he prayed until late at night.

## Translation Notes:

* **he dismissed the crowd** - This is another way of saying, “he sent the crowd on their way” or, “he told the crowd of people to go back to their homes.”
* **mountainside** - That is, “the side of a mountain.”

# The Storm 31-02

**Meanwhile**, the **disciples** were **rowing their boat**, but by late in the night they had only **reached** the middle of the lake. They were rowing with **great difficulty** because the wind was blowing hard against them.

## Translation Notes:

* **Meanwhile** - That is, “while Jesus was praying on the mountainside.”
* **rowing their boat** - The boat had a sail, but it would not have worked when the wind was against them.
* **reached** - This can also be translated as, “traveled as far as.” - **great difficulty** - That is, “much difficulty” or, “a lot of difficulty.”

# Jesus Walked on the Water 31-03

Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# The Disciples Were Afraid 31-04

The **disciples** were very afraid when they saw **Jesus**, because they thought they were seeing **a ghost**. Jesus knew that they were afraid, so he called out to them and said, “**Do not be afraid**. **It is I!**”

## Translation Notes:

* **a ghost** - That is, “a spirit.” They thought Jesus was a spirit, since normally a human being cannot walk on water.
* **Do not be afraid** – For some languages it may be more natural to say here, “Stop being afraid.”
* **it is I!** - For some, it might be more natural to translate this as, “It is me, Jesus.”

# Jesus Called Peter 31-05

Then **Peter** said to **Jesus**, “**Master**, **if it is you**, command me to come to you on the water.” Jesus told Peter, “**Come!**”

## Translation Notes:

* **if it is you** - That is, “if it is really you, and not a ghost.” - **Come!** - That is, “Come here” or, “Come to me” or, “Come, walk to me.”

# Peter Walked on the Water 31-06

So, **Peter** got out of the boat and started walking to **Jesus** on the surface of the water. But after walking a short distance, he **turned his eyes away from** Jesus and began to look at the waves and to feel the strong wind.

## Translation Notes:

* **turned his eyes away from** - This expression means, “looked away from.” It could also be translated as, “stopped looking at.”

# Peter Sank 31-07

Then **Peter** became afraid and began to sink in the water. He cried out, “**Master** , **save** me!” **Jesus** reached out right away and grabbed him. Then he said to Peter, “**You man of little faith**, **why did you doubt**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **You man of little faith** - This may also be translated as, “You have so little faith in me!” or, “You do not trust me very much!”
* **why did you doubt?** - That is, “You should not have doubted me!” or, “You should have trusted me completely.” This isn’t a real question, but a way in this language to make a strong point. In many languages, it works better to express this as a statement.

# The Son of God 31-08

**When Peter and Jesus got into the boat, the wind** immediately stopped blowing and the water became calm. The **disciples** were amazed. They **worshiped** Jesus, saying to him, “**Truly, you are the Son of God**.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 14:22-33; Mark 6:45-52; John 6:16-21*

## Translation Notes:

* **When Peter and Jesus got into the boat, the wind** – It may be better to say, “Peter and Jesus got into the boat, and then the wind.”
* **worshiped Jesus** – This could be translated as, “bowed down and worshiped Jesus.” This word has the idea of physically bowing down in front of someone out of respect and reverence.
* **Truly you are the Son of God** – Other ways to say this would be, “You really are the Son of God” or, “It really is true that you are the Son of God.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Country of the Gerasenes 32-01

**One day**, **Jesus** and his **disciples** went in a boat across the lake to the region where **the Gerasene people** lived.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **the Gerasene people** - The Gerasenes lived in an area along the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee. They are descendants of the Jews, but we know few details about them.

# A Man with Evil Spirits 32-02

When they reached the other side of the lake, **a demon-possessed man** **came running up to** **Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **a demon-possessed man** - That is, “a man who had demons in him” or, “a man who was controlled by evil spirits.”
* **came running up to** - That is, “ran to” or, “ran and stopped in front of.”

# Breaking the Chains 32-03

This man was so strong that nobody could control him. People had even **fastened** his arms and legs with chains, but he **kept breaking them**.

## Translation Notes:

* **fastened his arms and legs** - That is, “restrained” or, “bound.” - **kept breaking them** - Some languages may need to say, “kept breaking the chains.”

# Living among the Tombs 32-04

The man lived **among the tombs** in the area. This man would scream all day and all night. He did not wear clothes and cut himself repeatedly with stones.

## Translation Notes:

* **among the tombs** - That is “near the tombs” or, “around the tombs.”

# Jesus Commanded the Demons 32-05

When the man came to **Jesus**, he **fell on his knees** in front of him. Jesus said to the **demon**, “Come out of this man!”

## Translation Notes:

* **fell on his knees** - That is, “quickly knelt down on the ground.”

# My Name Is Legion 32-06

The **man with the demon** **cried out** in a loud voice, “**What do you want with me**, **Jesus**, **Son** of **the Most High God**? Please do not torture me!” Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” **He replied**, “My name is **Legion**, because **we are many**.” (A “legion” was a group of several thousand soldiers in the Roman army.)

## Translation Notes:

* **cried out** – That is, “shouted” or, “exclaimed.” - **What do you want with me** - This expression means, “What are you going to do to me?”
* **the Most High God** - That is, “the Supreme God” or, “the Most Sovereign God” or, “the Most Powerful God.” The meaning of “high” here refers to God’s greatness. It does not refer to altitude or being tall.
* **Legion** - This was the name of the group of demons, but it also describes that the evil spirits were very numerous. Use the name if the note that follows will make the meaning clear in your language. If not, you may need to translate the word as something like, “Army” or, “Crowd” or, “Thousands.”
* **we are many** - we are many - That is, “there are many of us” or, “we are many demons.”

# The Herd of Pigs 32-07

The **demons** **begged** **Jesus**, “Please **do not send us** out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons begged Jesus, “**Please send us** into the pigs **instead**!” Jesus said, “**Go!**”

## Translation Notes:

* **do not send us** – That is, “do not make us go.” - **Please send us** – That is, “Please let us go.” - **instead** - That is, “instead of making us go away.” - **Go!** – This could be translated as, “Go into the pigs!” or, “You may go into the pigs!”

# The Pigs Drowned 32-08

The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs. The pigs ran down a steep bank into the lake and drowned. There were about 2,000 pigs in the **herd**.

## Translation Notes:

* **herd** - That is, “herd of pigs” or, “group of pigs.” Many languages have specific names for groups of animals, such as “flock of sheep,” “herd of cattle,” “pack of dogs,” and “school of fish.” Use a word that can appropriately be used for a large group of pigs.

# The Man Was Healed 32-09

When the people who took care of the pigs saw **what happened**, they ran into the town and told everyone that they met what **Jesus** had done. The people from the town came and saw the man **who used to have the demons**. He was sitting calmly, wearing clothes, and acting like a normal person.

## Translation Notes:

* **what happened** - That is, “how Jesus sent the demons out of the man and into the pigs.”
* **who used to have the demons** – That is, “in whom the demons had lived” or, “who had been controlled by the evil spirits.”

# Jesus Left 32-10

The **people** were very **afraid** and asked **Jesus** to leave. So Jesus got into the boat and **prepared** to leave. The man who used to have the demons **begged to go along with Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **people** – Some languages may prefer to say, “people from that region” or, “the Gerasene people.”
* **afraid** – It may be better to say, “afraid because of what Jesus had done.”
* **prepared** – That is, “was getting ready.” - **begged to go along with Jesus** - That is, “begged Jesus to let him go with him” or, “earnestly asked Jesus if he could go with him.”

# Go Home 32-11

But **Jesus** said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that **God** has done for you and **how he has had mercy on you**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **how he has had mercy on you** - This can be translated as, “how he has shown mercy to you” or, “that he has been merciful to you.”

# The Testimony of the Man 32-12

So the man went away and told everyone about what **Jesus** had done for him. Everyone who **heard his story** **was filled with wonder and amazement**.

## Translation Notes:

* **heard his story** – That is, “heard the man tell what had happened to him.”
* **was filled with wonder and amazement** - The words “amazement” and “wonder” are similar in meaning. They are used together to emphasize how amazed the people were. This could be translated as, “completely astonished about what he told them.”

# The Sick Woman 32-13

**Jesus** returned to the other side of the lake. After he arrived there, a large crowd gathered around him and **pressed in on him**. In the crowd was a woman who had suffered from a bleeding problem for twelve years. She had paid all of her money to doctors so they would **heal** her, but **she only got worse**.

## Translation Notes:

* **pressed in on him** - That is, “pushed tightly against him” or, “crowded in tightly around him.”
* **she only got worse** - That is, “her condition only got worse” or, ” her health got worse instead of better” or, “instead she became more sick.”

# The Woman Was Healed 32-14

She had heard that **Jesus** had **healed** many sick people and thought, “**I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be healed, too!**” So she came up behind Jesus and touched his clothes. As soon as she touched them, the bleeding stopped!

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Who Touched Me? 32-15

Immediately, **Jesus** realized that **power had gone out from him**. So he turned around and asked, “Who touched me?” The **disciples** replied, “There are many people crowding around you and bumping into you. **Why did you ask, ‘Who touched me?’**”

## Translation Notes:

* **power had gone out from him** - This may be translated as, “healing power had flowed from him into someone else” or, “his power had healed someone.” Jesus did not lose any power because of this.
* **Why did you ask, ‘Who touched me?’** - In some languages it may be better to use an indirect quote here such as, “Why did you ask who was touching you?” or, “Why you are wondering who touched you?”

# Healed by Faith 32-16

The woman **fell on her knees** **before Jesus**, **shaking and very afraid**. Then she told him what she had done, and that she had been healed. Jesus said to her, “**Your faith has healed you**. Go in **peace**.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 8:28-34; 9:20-22; Mark 5:1-20; 5:24b-34; Luke 8:26-39; 8:42b-48*

## Translation Notes:

* **fell on her knees** – That is, “quickly knelt down.” - **before Jesus** – That is, “in front of Jesus.” - **shaking and very afraid** - That is, “shaking with fear” or, “trembling because she was afraid.”
* **Your faith has healed you.** - This could also be translated as, “You have been healed because of your faith.”
* **Go in peace.** - People spoke this traditional blessing when they left each other. Other languages may say something similar such as, “Go well”, “Go with God” or, “Peace.” Other ways of translating it could be, “May you have peace as you go” or, “Go and know that all is well between us.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Jesus Taught the Crowds 33-01

**One day**, **Jesus** was teaching a very large crowd of people near the shore of the lake. So many people came to hear him that Jesus got into a boat at the edge of the water in order to have enough space to speak to them. He sat in the boat and taught the people.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

# The Seed on the Path 33-02

**Jesus** told this story. “A farmer went out to plant **some seed**. As he was **spreading the seeds by hand**, some seeds happened to fall on the path, and the birds came and ate all of those seeds.”

## Translation Notes:

* **spreading the seeds by hand** - That is, “throwing the seeds on the soil” or, “covering all of his crop soil with seeds.” This is the way that farmers in the ancient Middle East typically planted grain-bearing crops.

# The Seed on the Rocks 33-03

“Other seeds fell on **rocky ground**, where there was very little soil. The seeds in the rocky ground sprouted quickly, but their roots were not able to go deep into the soil. When the sun came up and it got hot, the plants withered and died.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **rocky ground** - That is, “ground that was full of rocks.”

# The Seed in the Thorns 33-04

“Still other seeds fell among thorn bushes. Those seeds began to grow, but **the thorns** **choked them out**. So the plants that grew from the seeds in the **thorny ground** did not produce any grain.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **the thorns** – That is, “the thorn plants” or, “the thorn bushes.” - **choked them out** - This can also be translated as, “overshadowed them” or, “crowded them out.”
* **thorny ground** - That is, “ground that was covered with thorny bushes.”

# The Seed in Good Soil 33-05

“Other seeds fell into **good soil**. These seeds grew up and produced 30, 60, or even 100 times as much grain as the seed that had been planted. **He who has ears, let him hear!**”

## Translation Notes:

* + **good soil** – That is, “fertile soil” or, “soil that was good for growing plants.”
* **He who has ears, let him hear!** - This saying means, “Everyone who hears what I am saying should listen to me carefully” or, “If anyone hears what I have said, he should pay attention to what I mean.” This can also be translated as a command. “Since you have ears to hear, listen carefully to what I am saying.”

# The Seed Is the Word 33-06

**This story confused the disciples**. So **Jesus** explained, “The seed is the **word of God**. The path **is a person** who hears God’s word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** **takes the word away from him**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **This story confused the disciples.** - That is, “The disciples did not understand this story.”
* **is a person** - This comparison can also be translated as, “is like a person” or, “represents a person” or, “refers to a person” or, “is speaking about a person.”
* **takes the word away from him** - This may also be translated as, “takes God’s word away, causing him to forget it” or, “steals the word from his heart so he won’t believe it and be saved.” You may also add the following: “just as birds eat up the seeds that fall on a path.”

# Persecution and Hardship 33-07

“The **rocky ground** **is a person** who hears **God’s word** and **accepts it with joy**. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he **falls away**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **rocky ground** - See how you translated this term in - **is a person** - See how you translated this comparison in - **accepts it with joy** - That is, “believes it joyfully” or, “joyfully agrees that it is true.”
* **falls away** - That is, “no longer follows God or obeys him” or, “stops following or obeying God.”

# The Desire for Riches 33-08

“The **thorny ground** **is a person** who hears **God’s word**, but as time passes, the **cares**, **riches**, and **pleasures of life** **choke out** his **love** for **God**. As a result, the teaching he heard **does not produce fruit**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **thorny ground** - See how you translated this term in - **is a person** - See how you translated this comparison in - **cares** - That is, “concerns” or, “needs” or, “problems.” - **riches**
* That is, “desire for wealth.” - **pleasures of life** - This could also be translated as, “doing things to get pleasure” or, “focusing on things that give pleasure.”
* **choke out** - That is, “squelch” or, “destroy” or, “overcome.” This phrase could also be translated as, “cause him to stop loving God.”
* **does not produce fruit** - That is, “does not produce spiritual fruit” or “does not behave in a way that shows God’s Spirit is working in him.”

# Spiritual Fruit 33-09

“But the **good soil** **is a person** who hears the **word of God**, **believes** it, and **produces fruit**.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 13:1-8, 18-23; Mark 4:1-8, 13-20; Luke 8:4-15*

## Translation Notes:

* + **good soil** - See how you translated this term in - **is a person** - See how you translated this comparison in - **produce fruit** - See how you translated this phrase in - *A Bible story from*
* These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Mustard Seed 34-01

**Jesus** told many other **stories** about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The kingdom of God is like a **mustard seed** that someone planted in his field. You know that the mustard seed is **the smallest seed of all**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **stories** - Jesus used these stories to teach truths about God’s kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not. If your language has a term that includes both fictional and real stories, you should use it here.
* **mustard seed** - This probably refers to the seed of the black mustard plant, which has tiny seeds that rapidly grow into very large plants. If there is a word for this plant in your language, you should use it. If not, you may need to substitute the name of another plant which has the same characteristics.
* **the smallest seed of all** - That is, “the smallest of all the seeds that people plant.”

# The Large Tree 34-02

“But when the **mustard seed** **grows**, it becomes the largest of all of the **garden plants**, big enough that even the birds come and **rest in** its branches.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **mustard seed** - See how you translated this term in - **grows** – You may want to add, “into a mature plant.” - **garden plants** – This can also be translated as, “plants that would be planted in a garden.”
* **rest in** - This may also be translated as, “sit on” or, “perch on.”

# The Yeast 34-03

**Jesus** told another **story**, “The **kingdom of God** is like **yeast** that a woman mixes into some **bread dough** until **it spreads throughout the dough**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **story** - See how you translated this term in - **yeast** - This can also be translated as, “leaven” or, “the little bit of leaven.” It is added to bread dough to make it rise. A little bit of yeast can be mixed into a large amount of dough and make the whole batch of dough rise.
* **bread dough** - This is a mixture of flour and liquid that can be shaped and baked into bread. If you do not have words for dough or flour, you can borrow a word for flour or call it “ground-up grain.”
* **it spreads throughout the dough** - That is, “every part of the dough has yeast in it” or, “the yeast grows throughout all the dough.”

# The Treasure in the Field 34-04

“The **kingdom of God** is also like **treasure** that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then **buried it again**. He was so **filled with joy** that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to **buy that field**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **treasure** - That is, “something that is very valuable.” - **buried it again** - It is also possible to add, “so that no one else would find it.”
* **filled with joy** - Another way to say this is, “very happy” or, “excited.”
* **buy that field** - Some people may want to add, “so that the treasure would be his.”

# The Perfect Pearl 34-05

“The **kingdom of God** is also like a **perfect pearl of great value**. When a **pearl merchant** found it, he sold all that he had and used the money to buy it.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **perfect pearl** – That is, “a pearl without any defects.” - **pearl** - If pearls are unknown, this can be translated as, “beautiful stone” or, “beautiful stone-like thing.”
* **of great value** – That is, “that was very valuable” or, “that was worth a lot of money.”
* **pearl merchant** - That is, “pearl dealer” or, “pearl trader.” This refers to a person whose business is buying and selling pearls.

# Two Men at the Temple 34-06

Then **Jesus** told a **story** to some people who **trusted in their own good deeds** and **despised other people**. He said, “Two men went to the **Temple** to **pray**. One of them was a **tax collector**, and the other was a **religious leader**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **story** - See how you translated this term in - **trusted in their own good deeds** - That is, “believed that their good deeds made them righteous” or, “were proud of how perfectly they kept God’s law” or, “believed that their good deeds caused God to be completely pleased with them.”
* **despised other people** - That is, “considered other people to be inferior to them” or, “looked down on other people.”

# The Religious Leader’s Prayer 34-07

“**The religious leader prayed like this**, ‘Thank you, **God**, that **I am not a sinner like** other men—such as robbers, **unjust men**, **adulterers**, or even like that **tax collector**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **The religious leader prayed like this** - Another way to say this would be, “This is how the religious leader prayed” or, “The religious leader prayed in this way.”
* **I am not a sinner like** - That is, “I am not sinful like” or, “I am righteous, not like.”
* **unjust men** - That is, “men who are not righteous” or, “people who do evil things” or, “law breakers.”

# I Am Good 34-08

“‘For example, **I fast** two times every week and I give you **ten percent** of all the money and goods that I receive.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **I fast** - The religious ruler believed that doing this would earn favor with God.
* **ten percent** - That is, “one-tenth.”

# The Tax Collector’s Prayer 34-09

“But the **tax collector** **stood far away** from the **religious leader**, and **did not even look up to heaven**. Instead, **he pounded on his chest with his fist** and **prayed**, ‘**God**, please be **merciful** to me because I am a **sinner**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **stood far away** - This can also be translated as, “stood at a distance” or, “stayed separate.”
* **did not even look up to heaven** - The word “even” indicates that people normally looked up to heaven when praying to God, but that this man did not because he was so ashamed of his sin.
* **he pounded on his chest with his fist** - This could also be translated as, “because of his grief, he hit his chest with his fist” or, “he pounded his chest in sorrow.” If people would find this hard to understand because they beat their chest for other reasons, you could translate this as, “he showed his despair.”

# The Proud Will Be Humbled 34-10

Then **Jesus** said, “I tell you the **truth**, **God** heard the **tax collector’s** **prayer** and **declared him to be righteous**. But he did not like the **religious leader’s** prayer. God **will humble** everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever **humbles himself**.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 13:31-33, 44-46; Mark 4:30-32; Luke 13:18-21; 18:9-14*

## Translation Notes:

* **declared him to be righteous** - That is, “considered him to be a righteous person.” Even though the tax collector was a sinner, God was merciful to him because of his humility and repentance.
* **will humble** - This could also be translated as, “will give a lower status to” or, “will cause to not be important.” It could be translated figuratively as, “will bring down.”
* **will lift up** - That is, “will give a higher position to” or, “will honor.”
* **humbles himself** - That is, “chooses to behave in a humble way” or, “has a humble attitude about himself.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Jesus Taught Sinners 35-01

**One day**, **Jesus** was teaching many **tax collectors** and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **tax collectors** – Tax collectors were considered to be the worst of sinners because often they stole money from people by collecting a higher tax than the government required.

# The Religious Leaders Grumbled 35-02

Some **religious leaders** who were also there saw **Jesus** treating these **sinners** as friends, and they began to criticize him to each other. So Jesus told them this **story**.

## Translation Notes:

* **story** - Jesus used this story to teach truths about God’s kingdom. It is not clear if the events actually happened or not. If your language has a term that includes both fictional and real stories, you should use it here.

# The Two Sons 35-03

“There was a man who had two **sons**. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want **my inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his **property** between his two sons.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **my inheritance** – This could be translated as, “the part of your wealth that will be rightfully mine when you die.”
* **property** – That is, “wealth” or, “possessions.” This property would probably have included land, animals, and money.

# The Younger Son 35-04

“Soon the younger son gathered all that he had and went far away and **wasted his money** in **sinful living**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **wasted his money** - That is, “spent all his money without getting anything of value in exchange.” In some languages it can be translated as, “threw his money away” or, “ate all his money.”
* **sinful living** - That is, “doing sinful things.”

# The Famine 35-05

“After that, **a severe famine happened** in the land where the younger son was, and he had **no money to buy food**. So he took the only job he could find, **feeding pigs**. He was so miserable and hungry that he wanted to eat the pigs’ food.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **a severe famine happened** - That is, “there was very little food.” In some languages this might be translated as, “there was a severe famine.”
* **no money to buy food** - Because of the famine, food was very expensive, and he had already spent all of his money.
* **job** - This refers to work that he would do for someone else in exchange for money. If this is not clear, this sentence could start with, “So in order to earn some money, he took the only job.”
* **feeding pigs** - That is, “giving food to pigs.” This would have been considered as one of the lowest jobs in society at this time. If your language has a certain word for low status jobs, use that word.

# The Son Repented 35-06

“Finally, the younger son said to himself, ‘**What am I doing?** All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving. I will go back to my father and ask to be one of his servants.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **What am I doing?** - That is, “Why am I living like this?” or, ” I should not be living like this!” or, “It doesn’t make sense for me to live like this.” The son isn’t really asking a question, so some languages will have to translate this as a statement.

# The Father’s Welcome 35-07

“So the younger **son** started back towards his father’s home. When he was **still far away**, his father saw him and **felt compassion** for him. He ran to his son and hugged him and kissed him.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **still far away** – This can also be translated as, “within sight of his father’s home, but still a distance away.” The son was getting close to his father’s house but was still far enough away that most people in the house would not have seen him. Make sure it does not sound like he was still in a different country.
* **felt compassion** - That is, “felt deep love and pity.”

# I Have Sinned 35-08

“The **son** said, ‘Father, I have **sinned against God and against you**. **I am not worthy** to be your son.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **sinned against God and against you** - This could be translated as, “sinned against God, and I have also sinned against you.”
* **I am not worthy** – It is also possible to say, “So I am not worthy” or, “As a result, I am not worthy.”

# Prepare the Feast 35-09

“But his father told one of his **servants**, ‘Go quickly and bring the best clothes and put them on my **son**! Put a ring on his finger and put sandals on his feet. Then kill **the best calf** so we can have a feast and celebrate, because **my son was dead, but now he is alive!** **He was lost, but now he is found!**’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **the best calf** – This could also be translated as, “the fattest calf.” This was the calf that had been fattened so that when cooked it would taste the best.
* **My son was dead, but now he is alive!** - That is, “This is like my son was dead and is alive again!” or, “I grieved as if my son had died, but now I rejoice because it is as if he has come back to life!” The father is using this expression to show how happy he is that his son has come home.
* **He was lost, but now he is is found!** - That is, “This is like I had lost him but now I have found him.” This expression also shows how happy the father is about having his son at home again.

# The Older Brother 35-10

“So the people began to celebrate. **Before long**, the older son came home from working in the field. He heard the music and dancing and wondered what was happening.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **Before long** - This can also be translated as, “Soon” or, “After a little while.”

# The Brother Is Angry 35-11

“When the older **son** found out that they were celebrating because his brother had come home, he was very angry and would not go into the house. His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”

## Translation Notes:

-

# Working for Nothing 35-12

“The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not even give me **one small goat** so I could celebrate with my friends. But when **this son of yours** who **consumed your money** in **sinful** behavior came home, you **killed the best calf** for him!’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **one small goat** - A small goat would have fed fewer people than the best calf, and would not be valued as much. The older brother is complaining that his father was treating the sinful younger son better than him.
* **this son of yours** - This expression shows that the older son was angry. It shows his rejection of his younger brother and his disapproval of his father for welcoming back this wayward son. Other languages may also have an indirect way of communicating these things.
* **consumed your money** - That is, “squandered the money that you gave him” or, “devoured your wealth.” If possible, use an expression that shows the brother’s anger.
* **killed the best calf** - That is, “killed the best calf to eat at a feast.”

# We Must Celebrate 35-13

“The father answered, ‘My **son**, you are always with me, and everything I have is yours. But **it is right for us** to celebrate, because **your brother was dead, but now is alive**. **He was lost, but now is found!**’”

*A Bible story from: Luke 15:11-32*

## Translation Notes:

* + **it is right for us** - That is, “it is the right thing for us to do” or, “it is proper for us.”
* **your brother** - The father refers to his younger son as, “your brother” to remind the older son of his relationship to the younger son and of how he should love his younger brother.
* **was dead, but now is alive** - See how you translated this in - **He was lost, but now is found!** - See how you translated this in - *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# To the Mountain 36-01

**One day**, **Jesus** took three of his **disciples**, **Peter**, **James**, and **John** with him. (The disciple named John was not the same person who \*\*baptized They went up on a high mountain by themselves to pray.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **James** - This is a different James than the one who wrote the Book of James in the Bible. To make this clear, some languages may need to use two slightly different names or to spell them differently.

# Jesus Was Changed 36-02

As **Jesus** was praying, his face became as bright as the sun and his clothes became as white as light, **whiter** than anyone on earth could make them.

## Translation Notes:

* **whiter** - That is, “more white.”

# Moses and Elijah 36-03

Then **Moses** and the prophet **Elijah** **appeared**. These men had lived on the earth hundreds of years before this. They talked with **Jesus** about **his death, which would soon happen** **in Jerusalem**.

## Translation Notes:

* **appeared** – It is also possible to say, “appeared out of nowhere.” They suddenly were there.
* **his death, which would soon happen** - This could be translated as, “how he would soon die” or, “how he would soon be killed.”
* **in Jerusalem** – Some languages may prefer to say, “in the city of Jerusalem.”

# Peter’s Comments 36-04

As **Moses** and **Elijah** were talking with **Jesus**, **Peter** said to Jesus, “It is **good** for us to be here. Let us make three **shelters**, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.” Peter **did not know what he was saying**.

## Translation Notes:

* **shelters** - This can also be translated as, “lean-tos” or, “garden huts” or, “tents.” It refers to small, individual, temporary shelters, like the Jews made from tree branches during an annual Jewish holiday.
* **did not know what he was saying** - That is, “was speaking without understanding what was happening” or, “spoke without thinking clearly because he was so excited.”

# This Is My Son 36-05

As **Peter** was talking, a bright cloud came down and surrounded them and **a voice from the cloud said**, “This is my **Son** whom I **love**. I am pleased with him. **Listen to him**.” The three **disciples** were **terrified** and **fell on the ground**.

## Translation Notes:

* **a voice from the cloud said** – This can also be translated as, “a voice spoke from the cloud saying” or, “God spoke from the cloud and said.”
* **Listen to him** – This could be translated as, “He is the one you must listen to.”
* **terrified**–That is, “extremely scared.” - **fell on the ground** – That is, “quickly bowed to the ground” or, “immediately got down on the ground.” Make sure the translation of “fell” does not sound like an accident. They probably did this intentionally out of awe and fear.

# Alone with Jesus 36-06

Then **Jesus touched them** and said, “**Do not be afraid**. **Get up**.” When they looked around, **the only one still there was Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **touched them** – That is, “put his hand on them.” Some languages may prefer to specify where he touched them. If so, this could be translated as, “he touched them on the shoulder” or, “he put his hand on each one’s shoulder.”
* **Do not be afraid** – This could also be translated as, “Stop being afraid.”
* **Get up** - This could also be translated as, “Stand up” or, “Please get up.” Make sure that it sounds like Jesus spoke this with kindness.
* **the only one still there was Jesus** - It is also possible to add, “Moses and Elijah had left.”

# Keep the Secret 36-07

**Jesus** and the three **disciples** went back down the mountain. Then Jesus said to them, “Do not tell anyone yet about what happened here. I will soon **die** and then come back to **life**. After that, you may tell people.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 17:1-9; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36*

## Translation Notes:

* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Lazarus Was Sick 37-01

**One day**, **Jesus** received a message that **Lazarus** was very sick. Lazarus and his two sisters, **Mary** and Martha, were close friends of Jesus. When Jesus heard this news, he said, “**This sickness will not end in death**, but **it is for the glory of God**.” Jesus **loved** his friends, **but he waited where he was for two days**.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **Mary** - Jesus’ mother was also named Mary. This was a different woman.
* **this sickness will not end in death** - This can also be translated as, “the final result of this sickness will not be death” or, “Lazarus is sick, but death is not the final result of this sickness.” Jesus’ disciples probably thought this meant that Lazarus would not die. But Jesus knew that, although Lazarus would die from his sickness, he would live in the end.
* **it is for the glory of God** - That is, “this will cause people to praise God for how great he is.”
* **but he waited where he was for two days** - This could be translated as, “but he stayed where he was for two days, even though they wanted him to go and heal Lazarus.”

# Back to Judea 37-02

After the two days had passed, **Jesus** said to his **disciples**, “Let’s go back to **Judea**.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!” Jesus said, “Our friend **Lazarus** **has fallen asleep, and I must wake him**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Judea** - This refers to the southern section of Israel, which was settled by the tribe of Judah. Some languages will prefer to say, “the region of Judea.”
* **has fallen asleep, and I must wake him.** - Translate this phrase with the normal words for “asleep” and “wake” in your language. Although Jesus was using these words with a different meaning, the disciples did not understand that yet.

# Lazarus Was Dead 37-03

**Jesus’** **disciples** replied, “**Master**, if **Lazarus** is sleeping, then **he will get better**.” Then Jesus told them plainly, “**Lazarus is dead**. **I am glad** that I was not there, so that you may **believe** in me.”

## Translation Notes:

* **he will get better** - The disciples intended this in the sense of, “there is no reason for us to go to him now, since he will get well.”
* **I am glad** - This could be translated as, “I am happy” or, “It is good that.” It does not mean he was happy that Lazarus died, but rather that he was happy that God was going to show how great he is.

# Martha Met Jesus 37-04

When **Jesus** arrived at **Lazarus’** hometown, Lazarus had already been **dead** for four days. **Martha** **went out to meet Jesus** and said, “**Master**, if only you had been here, **my brother would not have died**. But I **believe** **God** **will give you whatever you ask from him**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Martha** - Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary. See - **went out to meet Jesus** – That is, “went to meet Jesus as he was coming into the town.”
* **my brother would not have died.** - That is, “you would have healed my brother and he would not have died” or, “you could have prevented my brother from dying.”
* **will give you whatever you ask from him** – That is, “will do whatever you ask him to do.”

# I Am the Resurrection 37-05

**Jesus** replied, “**I am the Resurrection and the Life**. Whoever **believes** in me **will live, even though he dies**. Everyone who believes in me **will never die**. Do you believe this?” **Martha** answered, “Yes, **Master**! I believe you are the **Messiah**, the **Son of God**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **I am the Resurrection and the Life** - This is one of several very powerful “I am” statements in which Jesus says something about his essential nature. In this one, Jesus indicated that he is the “provider” or, “source” of resurrection and life. If possible, translate this phrase in a way that makes it clear that this is his essential nature. This can also be translated as, “I am the one who resurrects people and causes them to live.”
* **will live, even though he dies.** - That is, “will live forever, even if he dies.” The English word, “he” does not only refer to men. Women who believe in Jesus will also live forever.
* **Martha** - Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary. See - **will never die** - This can also be translated as, “will live forever.”

# Mary Met Jesus 37-06

Then **Mary** arrived. She **fell at the feet of Jesus** and said, “**Master**, if only you had been here, **my brother would not have died**.” Jesus asked them, “Where have you put **Lazarus**?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.” Then Jesus wept.

## Translation Notes:

* **Mary** - This was the same woman as in not the mother of Jesus.
* **fell at the feet of Jesus** - That is, “knelt down at Jesus’ feet” as a sign of respect.
* **my brother would not have died.** - That is, “you could have kept my brother from dying” or, “you could have prevented my brother’s death” or, “my brother would still be alive.”

# Open the Tomb 37-07

The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening. When **Jesus** arrived at the tomb, **he told them**, “**Roll the stone away**.” But **Martha** said, “**He has been dead for four days**. There will be a bad smell.”

## Translation Notes:

* **he told them** - That is, “he told the men there.” He was probably not telling Mary and Martha to roll the stone away.
* **Roll the stone away** - Some languages may prefer to say, “Roll the stone away from the opening of the tomb.”
* **Martha** - Martha was the sister of Lazarus and Mary. See - **He has been dead for four days** - This could also be translated as, “He died four days ago and his body is lying there.”

# Rolling the Stone Away 37-08

**Jesus** responded, “**Did I not tell you** that you would **see God’s glory** if you **believe** in me?” So they **rolled the stone away**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Did I not tell you?** - That is, “Remember that I told you.” Jesus is not asking this question in order to get an answer, so some languages should translate this as a command.
* **see God’s glory** - That is, “see the glory of God displayed” or, “see God show how great he is.”
* **rolled the stone away** - Some languages should say, “rolled the stone away from the opening of the tomb.”

# Jesus’ Prayer 37-09

Then **Jesus** looked up to **heaven** and said, “**Father**, thank you for **hearing me**. I know you always listen to me, but I say this for the sake of all these people standing here, so that they will **believe** you sent me.” Then Jesus shouted, “**Lazarus**, **come out**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **hearing me** – That is, “listening to me.” It may be helpful to add, “as I pray to you” or, “when I talk to you.”
* **come out** - Some languages may prefer to say, “come out of the tomb.”

# Lazarus Was Alive Again 37-10

So **Lazarus came out!** He was still wrapped in **grave clothes**. **Jesus** told them, “Help him take off those grave clothes and release him!” Many of the **Jews** **believed** in Jesus **because of this miracle**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Lazarus came out!** - Some languages should say, “Lazarus came out of the tomb!”
* **grave clothes** - That is, “burial clothes.” This can also be translated as, “burial bandages” or, “strips of cloth.”
* **because of this miracle** – That is, “because God had done this amazing miracle” or, “because Jesus had made Lazarus come alive again.”

# The Leaders Were Jealous 37-11

But the **religious leaders** of the **Jews** were **jealous**, so they **gathered together** to plan how they could kill **Jesus** and **Lazarus**.

*A Bible story from: John 11:1-46*

## Translation Notes:

* **jealous** - That is, “jealous of Jesus’ power and popularity” or, “jealous that so many Jews were believing in Jesus.”
* **gathered together** - That is, “met together” or, “joined together.” This was a not a casual meeting, but a meeting for a specific purpose–to plan how to kill Jesus.
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Passover 38-01

Every year, the **Jews** celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how **God** had **saved** their ancestors from **slavery** in **Egypt** **many centuries earlier**. About three years after **Jesus** first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.

## Translation Notes:

* **many centuries earlier** - That is, “hundreds of years earlier” or, “a very long time before.”

# Judas Made a Deal 38-02

One of **Jesus’** **disciples** was a man named **Judas**. Judas was **in charge of the apostles’ moneybag**, but he **loved money** and often stole money out of the bag. After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the **Jewish leaders** and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money. He knew that the Jewish leaders denied that Jesus was the **Messiah** and that they were plotting to kill him.

## Translation Notes:

* **in charge of the apostles’ moneybag** - That is, “responsible to hold the apostles’ money” or, “responsible to hold the bag that had the disciples’ money in it and to distribute funds from it.”
* **loved money** – That is, “highly valued money” or, “wanted money.” Some languages would not use the same word that can be used for “loved people.”

# Thirty Pieces of Silver 38-03

The **Jewish leaders**, led by the **high priest**, paid **Judas** **thirty silver coins** to **betray** **Jesus**. This happened just as the **prophets** had predicted. Judas agreed, took the money, and went away. He began looking for an opportunity to help them arrest Jesus.

## Translation Notes:

* **thirty silver coins** - Each of these coins were worth about four days’ wages.

# This Is My Body 38-04

In Jerusalem, **Jesus** **celebrated** the **Passover** with his **disciples**. During the Passover meal, Jesus **took some bread** and **broke it**. He said, “Take and eat this. **This is my body**, which is **given for you.** **Do this to remember me.**” In this way, Jesus said that his body would be **sacrificed** for them.

## Translation Notes:

* **celebrated** – That is, “was celebrating.” - **took some bread** – This could be translated as, “picked up a piece of bread” or, “picked up a flat loaf of bread.”
* **broke it** – Some languages should say, “tore it in pieces” or, “tore it in half” or, “tore off part of it.”
* **given for you** - This can also be translated as, “which I give for you.”
* **Do this to remember me** - That is, “Do this as a way to remind yourselves of what I am doing for you.” Jesus was referring to his death, which would happen soon.

# This Is My Blood 38-05

Then **Jesus** picked up a cup and said, “**Drink this.** **It is my blood of the New Covenant** that **is poured out** **for the forgiveness of sins**. Do this to **remember me** every time you drink it.”

## Translation Notes:

* **a cup** – That is, “a cup of wine” or, “a cup full of a drink made from grapes.”
* **Drink this** - That is, “Drink what is in this cup” or, “Drink from this cup.” The drink in the cup was made from grapes so that it had a deep red color.
* **blood of the New Covenant** – This could be translated as, “blood that makes the New Covenant possible” or, “blood that is the basis for the New Covenant.”
* **is poured out** - This could be translated as, “will run out of my body” or, “I will bleed out.”
* **for the forgiveness of sins** - That is, “so that God can completely forgive people for all of their sins.”
* **remember me** - That is, “celebrate me” or, “commemorate me.” It could also be translated as, “especially focus on me” or, “remind you of me.”

# The Betrayer 38-06

Then **Jesus** said to the **disciples**, “One of you will **betray** me.” The disciples were shocked, and asked who would do such a thing. Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread **is the betrayer**.” Then he gave the bread to **Judas**.

## Translation Notes:

* **give this piece of bread** – That is, “hand this piece of bread.” - **is the betrayer** - This could also be translated as, “will betray me” or, “is the one who will betray me.”

# Satan Entered Judas 38-07

After **Judas** took the bread, **Satan entered into him**. **Judas left and went** to help the **Jewish** leaders arrest Jesus. **It was nighttime.**

## Translation Notes:

* **Satan entered into him.** - That is, “Satan went into him” or, “Satan took control of him.”
* **Judas left and went** - Some languages may prefer to say, “Judas left the meal and went” or, “Judas left the room and went outside.”

# You Will Be Scattered 38-08

After the meal, **Jesus** and his **disciples** walked to the **Mount of Olives**. Jesus said, “You will all **abandon me** tonight. **It is written**, ‘**I will strike the shepherd** and **all the sheep will be scattered**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **Mount of Olives** - This is the name of a hill covered with olive trees, just outside the walls of the city of Jerusalem. It can also be translated as, “Olive Tree Hill.”
* **abandon me** – That is, “desert me” or, “leave me.” - **It is written** - That is, “It is written in God’s word” or, “It is written in the scriptures” or, “One of God’s prophets wrote.” It is also possible to say, “What is written will happen” or, “It will be like what is written.” This prophecy refers to Jesus’ death and his followers running away.
* **I will strike** - That is, “I will kill.” - **the shepherd and all the sheep** - Do not use Jesus’ name in this quote because the prophet who first wrote it would not have known the shepherd’s name. Also, do not refer to the sheep being the disciples. It is best to use words that mean “shepherd” and “sheep” in your translation.
* **will be scattered** - That is, “will go away in different directions.”

# Jesus Prayed for Peter 38-09

**Peter** replied, “Even if all the others **abandon you**, I will not!” Then **Jesus** said to Peter, “**Satan** wants **to have all of you**, but I have **prayed** for you, Peter, **that your faith will not fail**. Even so, tonight, **before the rooster crows**, you will deny that you even know me three times.”

## Translation Notes:

* **abandon you** – Check to see how you translated this in - **to have all of you** - That is, “to completely control you” or, “to get you to serve him completely.” The word “you” is plural in this phrase. All of the words “you” and “your” that follow are singular.
* **that your faith will not fail** - That is, “that you will not stop believing in me.”
* **before the rooster crows** - Roosters normally crow at the first light of the new day. If that is not clear, it may be helpful to say, “Before the rooster crows at dawn tomorrow” or, “before the rooster crows tomorrow morning.”

# Peter’s Promise 38-10

**Peter** then said to **Jesus**, “Even if I must **die**, I will never **deny you**!” All the other **disciples** said the same thing.

## Translation Notes:

* **deny you** - That is, “deny that I know you” or, “deny that I am your disciple” or, “disown you.”

# At Gethsemane 38-11

Then **Jesus** went with his **disciples** to **a place called Gethsemane**. Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not **enter into temptation**. Then Jesus went to pray **by himself**.

## Translation Notes:

* **a place called Gethsemane** - This could be translated as, “a nearby place called Gethsemane” or, “a place called Gethsemane at the foot of the Mount of Olives.”
* **enter into temptation** - That is, “would not sin when they were tempted” or, “would not give in to the temptation they were about to experience.”
* **by himself** – This could be translated as, “alone.”

# Your Will Be Done 38-12

**Jesus** **prayed** three times, “**My Father**, if it is possible, please let me not have to **drink this cup of suffering**. But if there is no other way for people’s **sins** to be **forgiven**, then **let your will be done**.” Jesus was very troubled and **his sweat was like drops of blood**. **God** sent an **angel** to strengthen him.

## Translation Notes:

* **drink this cup of suffering** - That is, “go through this suffering” or, “suffer what is about to happen” or, “endure this suffering.”
* **let your will be done** - This expression means, “do what you have planned” or, “do what needs to be done.”

# The Disciples Slept 38-13

**After each time of prayer**, **Jesus** came back to his **disciples**, but they were asleep. When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”

## Translation Notes:

* **After each time of prayer** - That is, “Every time Jesus prayed that prayer.” This refers to the three times he prayed, as mentioned in

# Judas Betrayed Jesus 38-14

**Judas** came with the **Jewish leaders**, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were carrying swords and clubs. Judas **came to** **Jesus** and said, “**Greetings**, **Teacher**,” and kissed him. This was **the sign** for the Jewish leaders to know whom to arrest. Then Jesus said, “Judas, **do you betray me with a kiss**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **came to** - Some languages may prefer to say, “went to.”
* **Greetings** - This can also be translated as, “Hello” or, “Peace” or, “Good evening.”
* **the sign** - That is, “the signal.” - **do you betray me with a kiss?** - That is, “are you really going to betray me with a kiss?” Jesus is not looking for an answer to this question. So some languages would translate it as a statement, such as, “you are betraying me by kissing me!” or, “you make your betrayal even worse by kissing me!”

# Peter Fought for Jesus 38-15

**As the soldiers arrested Jesus**, **Peter** **pulled out his sword** and cut off the ear of a **servant** of the **high priest**. Jesus said, “Put the sword away! I could ask the **Father** for an army of **angels** to defend me. But **I must obey my Father**.” Then Jesus **healed** the man’s ear. After Jesus was arrested, all the **disciples** ran away.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 26:14-56; Mark 14:10-50; Luke 22:1-53; John 12:6; 18:1-11*

## Translation Notes:

* **As the soldiers arrested Jesus** - That is, “While the soldiers were arresting Jesus.”
* **pulled out his sword** - That is, “pulled out his sword from the place where he was carrying it.”
* **I must obey my Father** - That is, “I won’t do that because I must obey my Father’s will and allow myself to be arrested.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The House of the High Priest 39-01

It was now **the middle of the night**. The soldiers led **Jesus** to the house of the **high priest** in order for the high priest **to question him**. **Peter** followed far behind them. When Jesus was taken into the house, Peter stayed outside and warmed himself by a fire.

## Translation Notes:

* **the middle of the night** - This expression means, “halfway through the night” or, “very late at night.”
* **to question him** – That is, “to ask Jesus questions to try to find something they could accuse Jesus of doing wrong.”

# The False Witnesses 39-02

Inside the house, the **Jewish leaders** **put Jesus on trial**. They brought many false **witnesses** who **lied about him**. However, **their statements did not agree with each other**, so the Jewish leaders could not prove **he was guilty of anything**. Jesus did not say anything.

## Translation Notes:

* **put Jesus on trial** – This could be translated as, “had a formal meeting to accuse Jesus of doing something wrong.” Usually a trial is done to find out if someone is innocent or guilty of a certain crime. In this case, the leaders were determined to make Jesus seem guilty.
* **lied about him** - That is, “told lies about him” or, “falsely accused him of doing something wrong.”
* **their statements did not agree with each other** - This could be translated as, “they said things about Jesus that were very different from each other” or, “the witnesses said things about Jesus that contradicted each other.”
* **he was guilty of anything** – That is, “that he had done anything wrong.”

# Are You the Son of God? 39-03

Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at **Jesus** and said, “Tell us, are you the **Messiah**, the **Son of the living God**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **Finally** - That is, “After they were unable to find any evidence against him” or, “After they were unable to prove that he was guilty.”

# I Am the Son of God 39-04

**Jesus** said, “**I am**, and you will see me **seated with God and coming from heaven**.” The **high priest** **tore his clothes in anger** and shouted to the other **religious leaders**, “We do not need any more **witnesses**! You have heard him say that he is the **Son of God**. **What is your judgment**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **I am** - That is, “I am as you said” or, “I am the Messiah and the Son of God.” “I am” is also the name of God (See By saying simply, “I am” Jesus was also saying that he is God. If possible, translate this so that people will see a similarity between Jesus’ answer and the name of God.
* **seated with God** - This could be translated as, “reigning with God.” Because God is the ruler over all, people talk about him as sitting on a throne in heaven. By saying that he would be seated with God, Jesus claimed that he had authority to rule with the Father.
* **seated with God and coming from heaven** – This could be translated as, “sitting beside God and then coming from heaven.”
* **tore his clothes in anger** - The Jews would tear their clothes to show grief or anger. If tearing the clothes means something else in your language, you may want to substitute a phrase such as, “he was extremely angry.”
* **What is your judgment?** - That is, “What is your decision?” or, “Tell us what have you decided: Is he innocent or guilty?” The chief priest wanted the religious leaders to condemn Jesus for claiming to be equal with God.

# They Mocked Jesus 39-05

The **Jewish leaders** all answered the **high priest**, “He deserves to **die**!” Then **they blindfolded Jesus**, **spit on him**, hit him, and **mocked** him.

## Translation Notes:

* **they blindfolded Jesus** - That is. “they covered Jesus’ eyes so that he could not see.”
* **spit on him** - This could also be translated as, “spit on him to insult him” or, “spit on him in order to say that he was worthless.” This was a way of showing contempt for someone.

# Peter and the Servant Girl 39-06

As **Peter** was waiting outside the house, a **servant girl** saw him and said to him, “You also were with **Jesus**!” Peter **denied it**. Later, another girl said the same thing, and **Peter denied it again**. Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both **are from Galilee**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **denied it** - This can be translated as, “said that it was not true” or, “said that he was not with Jesus” or, “said, ‘No. That is not true.’”
* **Peter denied it again** – This could be translated as, “Peter denied knowing Jesus a second time” or, “again Peter said he had not been with Jesus.”
* **are from Galilee** - This could also be translated as, “are Galileans.” The people could tell from the way Jesus and Peter talked that they came from the region of Galilee.

# Peter Denied Jesus 39-07

Then **Peter vowed**, saying, “**May God curse me if I know this man**!” Immediately, **a rooster crowed**, and **Jesus** turned around and looked at Peter.

## Translation Notes:

* **vowed** - That is, “said emphatically” or, “said very strongly.” - **May God curse me if I know this man** - This is a curse that means, “May God cause harm to me if what you say is true” or, “May God punish me if I am lying to you!” In this way Peter was saying very strongly that he did not know Jesus. He also referred to Jesus as, “this man” to make it sound like he did not know him.
* **a rooster crowed** - “Crowing” is the loud sound that a rooster makes. Compare how you translated this in

# Judas Killed Himself 39-08

**Peter** went away and **cried bitterly**. Meanwhile, **Judas**, **the betrayer**, saw that the **Jewish leaders** **had condemned Jesus to die**. Judas became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

## Translation Notes:

* **cried bitterly** - That is, “cried, feeling deep sorrow” or, “cried, feeling deep regret.”
* **the betrayer** – That is, “who had betrayed Jesus” or, “who had helped the leaders arrest Jesus.”
* **had condemned Jesus to die** - That is, “had said that Jesus was guilty and must die.”

# Jesus and Pilate 39-09

Early the next morning, the **Jewish leaders** brought **Jesus** to **Pilate**, the **Roman governor**. They hoped that Pilate would condemn Jesus as guilty and **sentence him to be killed**. Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the **king of the Jews**?”

## Translation Notes:

* **Roman governor** - That is, “Roman government official.” The Roman government had appointed Pilate to govern the region of Judea in Israel.
* **sentence him to be killed** - As governor, Pilate had the authority to condemn Jesus to death and to give approval for his crucifixion, or to set him free. The Jewish religious leaders did not have the authority to have someone killed.

# What Is Truth? 39-10

**Jesus** answered, “**You have said so**, but **my kingdom is not an earthly kingdom**. If it were, **my servants would fight for me**. I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about **God**. Everyone who **loves** the truth **listens to me**.” **Pilate** said, “**What is truth?**”

## Translation Notes:

* **You have said so** - That is, “You have spoken correctly.” - **my kingdom is not an earthly kingdom** - That is, “my kingdom is not like earthly kingdoms.”
* **my servants would fight for me** - That is, “my disciples would fight to protect me” so that I could establish my kingdom.
* **listens to me** – This could be translated as, “hears my teaching and obeys me.” It includes not just hearing Jesus’ words, but also doing what he says.
* **What is truth?** - that is, “Can anyone know what is true?”

# He Is Not Guilty 39-11

After speaking with **Jesus**, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, “**I find no guilt in this man**.” But the **Jewish leaders** and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him!” Pilate replied, “**He is not guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not guilty!”

## Translation Notes:

* **I find no guilt in this man** - That is, “I do not find this man to be guilty” or, “I have examined this man, and I do not see that he has done anything wrong.”
* **He is not guilty** - That is, “He has done nothing wrong!”

# The King of the Jews 39-12

**Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to **riot**, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** **Jesus**. The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put **a royal robe** and a **crown made of thorns** on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “**Look**, **the King of the Jews**!”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 26:57-27:26; Mark 14:53-15:15; Luke 22:54-23:25; John 18:12-19:16*

## Translation Notes:

* **riot** - That is, “start doing violent things in their anger.” - **a royal robe** - That is, “a robe like a king’s robe.” This robe had a bright color, so it looked like the kind of robe that a king would wear.
* **crown made of thorns** - This means that they tied thorn branches into a circle to look like a crown. A crown is an ornament that a king wears on his head to show his authority. But the crown that they put on Jesus’ head had sharp, dangerous thorns on it.
* **Look** – That is, “Look at” or, ”Here is.” - **the King of the Jews** – Since the soldiers were mocking Jesus, this could be translated as, “the so-called King of the Jews.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Jesus Carried His Cross 40-01

After the soldiers **mocked** **Jesus**, they **led him away** **to crucify him**. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.

## Translation Notes:

* **led him away** – That is, “forced him to go with them.” This could also be translated as, “took him away.”
* **to crucify him** - That is, “to kill him on a cross.”

# Jesus Was Nailed to the Cross 40-02

The soldiers brought **Jesus** to a place called “**the Skull**” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**. But Jesus said, “**Father**, **forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing**.” **Pilate** commanded that they write, “**King of the Jews**” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.

## Translation Notes:

* **the Skull** - A hill near Jerusalem with a white, rocky top that was shaped somewhat like the top of a skull.
* **forgive them, because they do not know what they are doing** - That is, “they do not understand the meaning of what they are doing, so please forgive them.” The soldiers thought Jesus was only a criminal who deserved to die. They did not understand that he was the Son of God.

# Gambling for His Clothes 40-03

The soldiers **gambled for Jesus’ clothing**. When they did this, **they fulfilled a prophecy that said**, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”

## Translation Notes:

* **gambled for Jesus’ clothing** - That is, “played a game of chance to win Jesus’ clothes.” We do not know how they did this, but in some cultures it could be translated as, “tossed stones on the ground to win Jesus’ clothing” or, “chose sticks to decide who could take Jesus’ clothes.”
* **they fulfilled a prophecy that said** - That is, “they did what the scriptures had long ago predicted would happen to the Messiah” or, “they did what a prophet wrote long ago.”

# The Two Robbers 40-04

**Jesus** was **crucified** between **two robbers**. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of **God**? **We are guilty, but this man is innocent**.” Then he said to Jesus, “**Please remember me** **in your kingdom**.” Jesus answered him, “Today, you will be with me in **Paradise**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **two robbers** - This could also be translated as, “two bandits.” This refers to criminals who used force or violence to steal things.
* **Do you have no fear of God?** - The robber does not expect an answer to this question; it is a way that some languages use to make a strong statement. If your language does not use questions in this way, then translate this as, “You should fear God!”
* **We are guilty but this man is innocent** – This could be translated as, “You and I have done evil things and deserve to die, but this man, Jesus, has done nothing wrong and does not deserve to die.” “We” here includes both robbers, but does not include Jesus.
* **this man** - This phrase refers to Jesus. - **Please remember me** - That is, “Please accept me” or, “Please welcome me” or, “Please allow me to be with you.” “Remember” here does not mean to recall something after forgetting it. Translate this in a way that communicates a humble request.
* **in your kingdom** – That is, “when you establish your kingdom” or, “when you are ruling as king.”
* **Paradise** - This is another name for “heaven.”

# Come Down from the Cross 40-05

The **Jewish leaders** and the other people in the crowd **mocked** **Jesus**. They said to him, “If you are the **Son of God**, come down from the **cross** and **save** yourself! Then we will **believe** you.”

## Translation Notes:

* **believe you** – That is, “believe in you” or, “believe that you are the Messiah.”

# The Darkness 40-06

Then the sky over the whole region became completely dark, even though it was the middle of the day. It stayed dark from noon until 3:00 in the afternoon.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Jesus Died 40-07

Then **Jesus** cried out, “**It is finished!** **Father**, I give my **spirit** **into your hands**.” Then he **bowed his head** and **gave up his spirit**. When he **died**, there was an earthquake and the **large curtain** that separated the people from the presence of **God** in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Translation Notes:

* **It is finished!** - This could also be translated as, “It is completed” or, “I have finished it” or, “I have completed the work.” This means that Jesus’ work of salvation was complete.
* **into your hands** - That is, “into your care.” - **bowed his head** – That is, “lowered his head.” - **gave up his spirit**
* That is, “gave up his spirit to God” or, “released his spirit to God and died.”
* **large curtain** - This was a large, strong fabric hung in the temple. It was like a wall separating one room from another. It can also be translated as “thick curtain” or, “hanging fabric” or, “screen.”

# The Soldier’s Testimony 40-08

**Through his death**, **Jesus** **opened a way** for people to **come to God**. When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that had happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the **Son of God**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Through his death** - That is, “By means of his death” or, “By dying.”
* **opened a way** - That is, “made it possible.” - **come to God** - That is, “come near to God” or, “go near to God” or, “approach God” or, “know God personally.” The tearing of the curtain showed that the barrier between God and people had been removed.

# The Burial of Jesus 40-09

Then **Joseph** and Nicodemus, two **Jewish leaders** who **believed** **Jesus** was the **Messiah**, **asked Pilate for Jesus’ body**. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front of the tomb to block the opening.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 27:27-61; Mark 15:16-47; Luke 23:26-56; John 19:17-42*

## Translation Notes:

* **Joseph** - This was not Mary’s husband. It was another man named Joseph.
* **asked Pilate for Jesus’ body** – That is, “asked Pilate to permit them to take Jesus’ body down from the cross.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Guards for the Tomb 41-01

After the soldiers **crucified** **Jesus**, **the unbelieving Jewish leaders** said to **Pilate**, “**That liar, Jesus, said** he would **rise from the dead** after three days. Someone must guard the **tomb** to make sure that his **disciples** do not steal the body and then say he has risen from the dead.”

## Translation Notes:

* **the unbelieving Jewish leaders** - That is, “the Jewish leaders who did not believe in Jesus.”
* **That liar, Jesus, said** – This could also be translated as, “That man, Jesus, lied and said.” They refused to believe that Jesus told the truth about being the Son of God.
* **rise from the dead** - That is, “come back to life” or, “become alive again.”

# The Tomb Was Sealed 41-02

**Pilate** said, “Take some soldiers and make the **tomb** as secure as you can.” So **they placed a seal on the stone** at the entrance of the tomb and put the soldiers there to make sure no one could steal the body.

## Translation Notes:

* **they placed** - That is, “the religious leaders and the soldiers placed.”
* **a seal on the stone** - They put a soft material like clay or wax between the stone and the tomb and marked it with an official seal. If anyone moved the stone, the material would break and show that someone had entered the tomb. This could also be translated as, “a mark on the stone to forbid people from moving it.”

# The Women 41-03

The day after **Jesus** was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and **the Jews were not permitted** to go to a **tomb** on that day. So very early on the morning after the Sabbath day, several women prepared to go to Jesus’ **tomb** to put more **burial spices** on his body.

## Translation Notes:

* **the Jews were not permitted** – The Sabbath day rules did not permit a Jew to walk very far or to do any other kind of work.
* **burial spices** - This refers to sweet-smelling spices that were placed on a dead body to cover the bad smell. This can also be translated as, “sweet-smelling spices” or, “sweet-smelling oils” or, “sweet-smelling plants.”

# The Angel Appeared 41-04

Suddenly, there was a **great earthquake**. An **angel** **that shone as bright as lightning** appeared from **heaven**. He rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the tomb were terrified and **fell to the ground like dead men**.

## Translation Notes:

* **great earthquake** – This could also be translated as, “violent earthquake” or, “forceful shaking of the ground.” Some languages may prefer to reword this as, “the ground began to shake violently.”
* **that shone as bright as lightning** - That is, “whose appearance was as bright as lightning.”
* **fell to the ground like dead men** - They were not dead, but they did not move, just like dead men do not move. They probably had fainted from fright. To make this clear, this could be translated as, “suddenly fell to the ground and did not move.”

# Jesus Is Risen 41-05

When the women arrived at the tomb, the **angel** told them, “**Do not be afraid**. **Jesus** is not here. **He has risen from the dead**, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

## Translation Notes:

* **Do not be afraid** - That is, “Stop being afraid.” An angel shining like lightning was a frightening sight!
* **He has risen from the dead** – This could be translated as, “He has come back to life.”

# Tell the Disciples 41-06

Then the **angel** told the women, “Go and tell the **disciples**, ‘**Jesus** has **risen** from the **dead** and **he will go to Galilee ahead of you**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **he will go to Galilee ahead of you**- That is, “he will meet you in Galilee” or, “he will be in Galilee when you get there.” “You” here is plural, including the apostles and other disciples.

# The Joyful News 41-07

The women were **full of fear and great joy**. They ran to tell the **disciples** the **good news**.

## Translation Notes:

* **full of fear and great joy** – That is, “experiencing emotions of fear and also great joy.”
* **good news** - This can also be translated as, “the good news that Jesus was alive again.” This good news refers to the fact that Jesus had risen from the dead.

# Jesus Appeared to the Women 41-08

As the women were on their way to tell the **disciples** the good news, **Jesus** appeared to them, and they **worshiped** him. Jesus said, “Do not be afraid. Go and tell my disciples to go to **Galilee**. They **will see me** there.”

*A Bible story from: Matthew 27:62-28:15; Mark 16:1-11; Luke 24:1-12; John 20:1-18*

## Translation Notes:

* **will see me** - That is, “will meet me” or, “can meet with me.” - *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Two Disciples 42-01

On the day that **Jesus** was **raised** from the dead, two of his **disciples** were going to a nearby town. As they walked, they talked about what had happened to Jesus. They had hoped that he was the **Messiah**, but then he was killed. Now the women said he was **alive** again. They did not know what to **believe**.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Jesus Walked with the Disciples 42-02

**Jesus** approached them and started walking with them, but they **did not recognize him**. He asked what they were talking about, and they told him about **all the remarkable things that had happened** concerning Jesus during the previous few days. They thought they were talking to a visitor who did not know what had happened in **Jerusalem**.

## Translation Notes:

* **did not recognize him** - That is, “did not know that it was Jesus.”
* **all the remarkable things that had happened** - This refers to the teaching and miracles of Jesus, his death, and the reports of his resurrection.

# Jesus Explained the Prophets 42-03

Then **Jesus** explained to them what **God’s word** said about the **Messiah**. He reminded them that the **prophets** said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would **rise** again **on the third day**. When they arrived at the town where the two men planned to stay, **it was almost evening**.

## Translation Notes:

* **on the third day** - Some languages may prefer to say, “on the third day after his death.”
* **it was almost evening** - This can also be translated as, “the day was ending” or, “the sun was going down” or, “it was starting to get dark.”

# Breaking the Bread 42-04

The two men invited **Jesus** to stay with them, so he did. When they were ready to eat the evening meal, Jesus picked up a loaf of bread, thanked **God** for it, and then broke it. Suddenly, they recognized that he was Jesus. But at that moment, **he disappeared from their sight**.

## Translation Notes:

* **he disappeared from their sight** - This could also be translated as, “he was gone” or, “he was no longer there.”

# Jesus Is Alive 42-05

The two men said to each other, “That was **Jesus**! That is why **our hearts were burning** when he explained **God’s word** to us!” Immediately, they went back to **Jerusalem**. When they arrived, they told the **disciples**, “Jesus is **alive**! We have seen him!”

## Translation Notes:

* **our hearts were burning** - That is, “we were getting excited” or, “we were beginning to hope” or, “we felt joy.” Some languages have ways of expressing it such as, “our hearts were stirred” or, “our hearts were warmed.” If you use an expression that refers to the heart burning, make sure it does not indicate that they were upset or angry.

# Jesus Appeared to the Disciples 42-06

As the **disciples** were talking, **Jesus** suddenly appeared in the room with them and said, “**Peace to you**!” The **disciples** thought he was a **ghost**, but Jesus said, “Why are you afraid and **doubting**? Look at my hands and feet. Ghosts do not have bodies like I do.” **To prove** that he was not a ghost, he asked for something to eat. They gave him a piece of cooked fish, and he ate it.

## Translation Notes:

* **Peace to you** - This may also be translated as, “May you have peace” or, “Be at peace.”
* **ghost** - This refers to the spirit of a dead person. - **doubting** – That is, “doubting that I am alive and here with you.”
* **To prove** - That is, “to demonstrate to them.”

# Jesus Opened their Minds 42-07

**Jesus** said, “I told you that everything written about me in **God’s word** must be **fulfilled**.” Then he **opened their minds so that they could understand** God’s word. He said, “It was written long ago that the **Messiah** would **suffer**, **die**, and **rise** from the dead **on the third day**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **must be fulfilled** - This can be translated as, “must happen.”
* **opened their minds so that they could understand** - This could also be translated as, “caused them to be able to understand” or, “made them able to comprehend.”
* **on the third day** - That is, “after three days” or, “three days later.”

# You Are Witnesses 42-08

“It was also written in the **scriptures** that my **disciples** will **proclaim** that everyone should **repent** in order to **receive** **forgiveness** for their **sins**. **They will do this starting in Jerusalem**, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere. **You are witnesses of these things**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **proclaim** - That is, “announce” or, “preach.” - **They will do this starting in Jerusalem** - That is, “They will begin doing this in Jerusalem” or, “They will begin to proclaim these things in Jerusalem.”
* **You are witnesses of these things** - That is, “You have seen these things happen” or, “You will tell other people the things that you have seen happen.”

# Jesus Taught for Forty Days 42-09

During the next forty days, **Jesus** appeared to his **disciples** many times. Once, he even appeared to more than 500 people at the same time! He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was **alive**, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Make Disciples 42-10

**Jesus** said to his **disciples**, “**All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me**. So go, **make disciples of all people groups** by **baptizing** them **in the name of** the **Father**, the **Son**, and the **Holy Spirit**, and by teaching them to **obey** everything I have commanded you. Remember, I will be with you always.”

## Translation Notes:

* **All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me** - This can also be translated as, “God has given me all authority in heaven and on earth” or, “God has given me complete authority over everyone in heaven and on earth” or, “I have all authority in heaven an on earth.”
* **make disciples of all people groups** - That is, “help people from every people group become my disciples.”
* **in the name of** - This phrase means both, “by the authority of” and, “under the authority of.” Consider translating the word “name” literally if it will be understood in this way in your language. This phrase can also be repeated as in, “in the name of the Father, in the name of the Son, and in the name of the Holy Spirit.”

# Jesus Went to Heaven 42-11

Forty days after **Jesus** rose from the dead, he told his **disciples**, “Stay in **Jerusalem** until my **Father** gives you **power** when the **Holy Spirit** **comes on you**.” Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and **a cloud hid him from their sight**. Jesus sat down **at the right hand of God** to rule **over all things**.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 28:16-20; Mark 16:12-20; Luke 24:13-53; John 20:19-23; Acts 1:1-11*

## Translation Notes:

* **comes on you** - That is, “comes down upon you” or, “comes onto you.”
* **a cloud hid him from their sight** - This could also be translated as, “he disappeared into a cloud.”
* **at the right hand of God** - This could also be translated as, “at the right side of God.”
* **over all things** - That is, “over everything.” - *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Disciples in Jerusalem 43-01

After **Jesus returned to heaven**, the **disciples** **stayed in Jerusalem** as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to **pray**.

## Translation Notes:

* **returned to heaven** - That is, “went back to heaven.” - **stayed in Jerusalem** – That is, “stayed in Jerusalem for awhile.” They didn’t stay there permanently.

# The Feast of Pentecost 43-02

Every year, 50 days after the **Passover**, the **Jews** celebrated an important day called **Pentecost**. Pentecost was a time when the Jews **celebrated the harvest**. Jews came from all over the world to **Jerusalem** to celebrate Pentecost together. **This year**, the time for Pentecost came about a week after **Jesus** had gone back to **heaven**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Pentecost** - “Pentecost” means “fiftieth .” You could use the word “Pentecost” in your translation and let the text explain the meaning. Or you could use a term that means, “50th day.”
* **celebrated the harvest** - The Jews would thank God for the harvest by bringing offerings and celebrate by having special meals.
* **This year** - That is, “In the year that Jesus died.”

# Speaking Other Languages 43-03

While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with **a sound like a strong wind**. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers. They were all **filled with the Holy Spirit** and they began to speak **in other languages**.

## Translation Notes:

* **a sound like a strong wind** - That is, “a noise that a strong wind makes” or, “the sound that the wind makes when it blows hard.”
* **filled with the Holy Spirit** - That is, “given ability by the Holy Spirit” or, “given power by the Holy Spirit.”
* **in other languages** - This could be translated as, “in languages other than their own language” or, “in foreign languages” or, “as people from other places speak.” The believers did not know these languages until the Holy Spirit gave them the power to speak them. Make sure the word used to translate “languages” refers to languages people actually speak and understand.

# The Crowd Gathered 43-04

When the people in **Jerusalem** heard the noise, **a crowd** came to see what was happening. When the people heard the **believers** proclaiming **the wonderful works of God**, they were astonished that they were hearing these things in their own native languages.

## Translation Notes:

* **a crowd** – This could be translated as, “a crowd of people” or, “a large group of people.”
* **the wonderful works of God** - This could be translated as, “the amazing things that God had done.”

# God’s Spirit Was Poured Out 43-05

Some of the people **accused the disciples of being drunk**. But **Peter** stood up and said to them, “Listen to me! These people are not drunk! This **fulfills** the **prophecy** made by the prophet **Joel** in which God said, ‘In **the last days**, I will **pour out my Spirit**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* **accused the disciples of being drunk** - This could also be translated as, “said that the disciples were drunk.”
* **Joel** - Joel was a prophet in Israel who lived hundreds of years before this happened.
* **the last days** - This refers to, “the final days before the end of the world.”
* **pour out my Spirit** - This can be understood in the sense of, “give my Spirit generously to people” or, “cause my Spirit to completely empower people.”
* **my Spirit** - That is, “my Holy Spirit.”

# You Crucified Jesus 43-06

“**Men of Israel**, **Jesus** was a man who did many mighty **signs and wonders** by the **power** of **God**, as you have seen and already know. But **you crucified him!**”

## Translation Notes:

* + **Men of Israel** – For some languages it is better to say, “People of Israel” for it to be clear that this included men and women. This could also be translated as, “My fellow people of Israel” or, “My fellow Jews” to make it clear that Peter was also a Jew and belonged to the “people of Israel.”
* **you crucified him!** - This could also be translated as, “you caused him to be crucified” or, “because of you, he was crucified.” The Jews did not actually nail Jesus to the cross. However, the Jewish leaders caused him to be condemned and many of the people in the crowd had shouted for him to be crucified.

# God Raised Jesus 43-07

“Although **Jesus** died, **God** **raised** him from the **dead**. **This fulfills the prophecy which says**, ‘**You will not let your** **Holy One** **rot in the grave**.’ We are **witnesses** to the fact that God **raised Jesus to life again**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **This fulfills the prophecy which says** – Another way to translate this would be, “This caused to come true what one of the prophets said long ago.”
* **You will not let your** - “You” and “your” refer to God the Father. To make that clear, this could be translated as, “You, God, will not let your.” Some languages may have a special way of addressing someone, such as, “You, O God.”
* **rot in the grave** - That is, “decay in the tomb” or, “decompose in the grave.” This refers to the fact that Jesus did not remain in the tomb very long and is another way of saying that he did not stay dead, but rather came back to life again.
* **raised Jesus to life again** - That is, “made Jesus alive again.”

# The Holy Spirit 43-08

“**Jesus is now exalted** to **the right hand of** **God the Father**. And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he **promised** he would do. The Holy Spirit is **causing** the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **Jesus is now exalted** - This could also be translated as, “Jesus is now lifted up” or, “Jesus is now raised up” or, “God has exalted Jesus.”
* **the right hand of** - This could also be translated as, “the most important position with” or, “the place of highest honor next to.”
* **causing** - That is, “enabling the believers to do” or, “giving these people the power to do.”

# Jesus Is the Messiah 43-09

“You **crucified** this man, **Jesus**. **But know for certain that** **God** has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and **Messiah**!”

## Translation Notes:

* + **But know for certain that** – This could also be translated as, “But you can know that it is true that” or, “But you can be sure that.”

# What Should We Do? 43-10

The people listening to **Peter** were **deeply moved by** the things that he said. So they asked Peter and the **disciples**, “**Brothers**, what should we do?”

## Translation Notes:

* **deeply moved by** - That is, “very troubled by” or, “felt very sad when they heard.” To be “moved” is to feel strong emotions.
* **Brothers** - This was a normal way for a Jew to address fellow Jews. It could also be translated as, “Friends.”

# Repent and Be Baptized 43-11

**Peter** answered them, “Every one of you should **repent** and be **baptized** **in the name of** **Jesus Christ** so that **God** will **forgive** your **sins**. Then he will also give you the **gift of the Holy Spirit**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **in the name of** - This phrase means both, “by the authority of” and, “under the authority of.” Consider translating the word “name” literally if it will be understood in this way in your language.
* **Christ** – This is the same meaning as “Messiah.” It could be translated as “Anointed One” or, “Chosen One.” Instead of translating the meaning, some translators may choose to keep the word “Christ” and spell it using the sounds in their own language.
* **Jesus Christ** – Since “Christ” is a title here, some translators may choose to change the order and say, “Christ Jesus.” Both orders are used in the Bible.

# 3000 Believe 43-12

About 3,000 people **believed** what **Peter** said and became **disciples** of **Jesus**. They were **baptized** and became part of the **church** at **Jerusalem**.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# The Disciples Met Together 43-13

The **disciples** continually listened to the teaching of the **apostles**, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. They enjoyed **praising** **God** together and they shared everything they had with each other. Everyone **thought well of them**. Every day, more people became **believers**.

*A Bible story from: Acts 2*

## Translation Notes:

* **thought well of them** - That is, “had a positive opinion of them.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Crippled Man 44-01

**One day**, **Peter** and **John** were going to the **Temple**. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw **a crippled man** who was **begging** for money.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **a crippled man** - This could also be translated as, “a lame man.” This refers to a man who did not have full use of his legs, and could not stand or walk.

# Get Up and Walk 44-02

**Peter** looked at the lame man and said, “I do not have any money to give you. But I will give you what I do have. **In the name of Jesus**, **get up** and walk!”

## Translation Notes:

* **In the name of Jesus** - “Name” here stands for the authority and power of the person. Therefore, this expression here means, “by the authority of Jesus.”
* **get up** - That is, “stand up.”

# The Crippled Man Was Healed 44-03

Immediately, **God** **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to **praise** God. The people in the **courtyard of the Temple** were amazed.

## Translation Notes:

* **courtyard of the Temple** - Only priests could enter the Temple, but ordinary Jews were allowed to come into this area that surrounded the Temple.

# The Power of Jesus 44-04

A crowd of people quickly came to see the man who was **healed**. **Peter** said to them, “Why are you amazed that this man is healed? We did not heal him through our own power or goodness. Rather, it is the **power** of **Jesus** and the **faith** that Jesus gives that healed this man.”

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Peter Preached 44-05

“You are the ones who told the **Roman** governor to kill **Jesus**. You killed the **author of life**, but **God** **raised** him from the **dead**. Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used **your actions** to **fulfill** the **prophecies** that the **Messiah** would **suffer** and die. So now, **repent** and **turn to God** so that **your sins will be washed away**.”

## Translation Notes:

* + **author of life** - That is, “the one who created life” or, “the one who gives us life” or, “the one who causes people to live.” This refers to Jesus.
* **your actions** - This can also be translated as, “the things you did.” This refers to their asking Pilate to kill Jesus.
* **turn to God** - That is, “decide to obey God.” - **your sin will be washed away** - This could be translated as, “God will wash away your sins” or, “God will take away your sins and make you clean.” This is talking about God purifying people in their spirit by completely removing their sins. It does not mean physical washing.

# Peter and John Were Arrested 44-06

The leaders of the **Temple** were very upset by what **Peter** and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison. But many of the people **believed** **Peter’s message**, and the **number of men** who believed in Jesus grew to about 5,000.

## Translation Notes:

* **Peter’s message** - That is, “the message that Peter had preached to them.”
* **number of men** - This was in addition to the woman and children who believed.

# Before the Jewish Leaders 44-07

The next day, the **Jewish leaders** brought **Peter** and **John** to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and John, “By what **power** did you heal this crippled man?”

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# No Other Way But Jesus 44-08

**Peter** answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the **power** of **Jesus** the **Messiah**. You **crucified** Jesus, but **God** **raised** him to **life** again! You **rejected him**, **but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **healed** - That is, “well” or, “whole” or, “strong.” - **rejected him** - That is, “refused to accept him” or, “refused to believe in Jesus” or, “refused to believe that Jesus is the Savior.”
* **but there is no other way to be saved except through the power of Jesus** – This could also be translated as, “but the only way to be saved is through the power of Jesus” or, “but only Jesus can save us, by his power.”
* **to be saved** - This can also be translated as, “to be saved from our sins” or, “that we can be saved from our sins.”

# The Disciples Were Released 44-09

The **leaders** **were shocked** that **Peter** and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were **ordinary** men **who were uneducated**. But **then they remembered** that these men **had been with Jesus**. **After they threatened** Peter and John, they **let them go**.

*A Bible story from: Acts 3:1-4:22*

## Translation Notes:

* **were shocked** - That is, “were very surprised” or, “were amazed.” - **ordinary** - That is, “common” or, “lower-class.” Peter and John were simple fishermen.
* **who were uneducated** - That is, “who did not have a formal education.” This could also be translated as, “who had not gone to religious school.”
* **then they remembered** - This could also be translated as, “But then they thought about the fact that.”
* **had been with Jesus** - This could also be translated as, “had spend time with Jesus” or, “had been taught by Jesus.”
* **After they threatened** - The leaders said that they would punish Peter and John if they continued to teach people about Jesus.
* **let them go** - That is, “allowed them to leave.” - *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Miracles of Stephen 45-01

One of the leaders in **the early Church** was a man named Stephen. He **had a good reputation** and **was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom**. Stephen did many **miracles** and **reasoned persuasively that** people should **believe** in **Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the early Church** - That is, “the Church when it first began.”
* **had a good reputation** - This could be translated as, “was thought well of by the people.” Some languages might translate this as, “had a good name.”
* **was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom** - This could also be translated as, “had power and ability from the Holy Spirit and had much wisdom” or, “was full of the Holy Spirit and was very wise.”
* **reasoned persuasively that** - That is, “gave convincing reasons why.”

# Stephen’s Arrest 45-02

**One day**, when Stephen was teaching about **Jesus**, some **Jews** who did not believe in Jesus began to argue with Stephen. They became very angry and lied about Stephen to the **religious leaders**. They said, “We heard him speak **evil** things about **Moses** and **God**!” So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false **witnesses** lied about Stephen.

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.

# You Killed the Messiah 45-03

The **high priest** asked Stephen, “**Are these things true**?” Stephen replied by reminding them of many of the great things **God** had done from the time of **Abraham** to the time of **Jesus**, and how God’s people continually **disobeyed** him. Then he said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people **always reject the Holy Spirit**, just as **your ancestors** always rejected God and killed his **prophets**. But you did something worse than they did! You killed the **Messiah**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **Are these things true?** - That is, “Are these accusations against you true?” or, “Are the things these people are saying about you true?” or, “Is it true that you said evil things about Moses and God?”
* **always reject the Holy Spirit** - That is, “never obey the Holy Spirit” or, “always refuse to listen to the Holy Spirit.”
* **your ancestors** - This could be translated as, “your ancestors, the Israelites.”

# Stephen Was Stoned 45-04

When the **religious leaders** heard this, they were so angry that they **covered their ears** and **yelled loudly**. They dragged Stephen out of the city and threw stones at him in order to kill him.

## Translation Notes:

* **covered their ears** - This could also be translated as, “They put their hands over their ears.” This was to show that they did not want to hear what Stephen said.
* **yelled loudly** - They were yelling in anger. Translate this in a way that communicates that they were very upset.

# Stephen’s Prayer 45-05

**As Stephen was dying**, he **cried out**, “**Jesus**, **receive** my **spirit**.” Then he fell to his knees and cried out again, “**Master**, **do not count this sin against them**.” Then he **died**.

## Translation Notes:

* **As Stephen was dying** - That is, “Just before Stephen died.”
* **cried out** – That is, “called out in a loud voice” or, “said very loudly.”
* **do no count this sin against them** - That is, “do not consider them guilty of the sin of killing me.”

# The People Attacked the Believers 45-06

A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and **guarded their robes** while they threw stones at him. That day, many people in **Jerusalem** started **persecuting** the followers of **Jesus**, so the **believers** fled to other places. **But in spite of this**, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.

## Translation Notes:

* **guarded their robes** - This could be translated as, “watched over their coats.” He was probably making sure they didn’t get stolen or damaged.
* **But in spite of this** – The Jewish leaders thought they could stop the spread of Jesus’ teaching by persecuting his followers. Instead, this caused them to scatter and spread the message even more widely.

# Philip on the Desert Road 45-07

A **disciple** of **Jesus’** named Philip was one of the **believers** who fled from **Jerusalem** during the **persecution**. He went to **Samaria** where he **preached** about Jesus and many people were **saved**. Then **one day**, an **angel** from **God** told Philip to go to a certain road in the desert. As he walked along the road, Philip saw an important official from **Ethiopia** riding in his **chariot**. The **Holy Spirit** told Philip to go and talk to this man.

## Translation Notes:

* **one day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **Ethiopia** - Ethiopia is a country in Eastern Africa.

# The Ethiopian Read Isaiah 45-08

When Philip **approached the chariot**, he heard the **Ethiopian** reading from what the **prophet Isaiah** wrote. The man read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and **as a lamb is silent**, he did not say a word. They treated him unfairly and did not respect him. **They took his life away from him**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **Ethiopian** - That is, a person from the country of Ethiopia. See note on
* **approached the chariot** - That is, “got close to the chariot” or, “came near to the chariot.”
* **as a lamb is silent** - This could also be translated as, “like a lamb that is silent even when it is about to be killed.”

# Philip Met the Ethiopian 45-09

Philip asked the Ethiopian, “Do you understand what you are reading?” The Ethiopian replied, “No. I cannot understand it unless someone explains it to me. Please come and sit next to me. **Was Isaiah writing about** himself or someone else?”

## Translation Notes:

* **Was Isaiah writing about** - This can also be translated as, “Was Isaiah referring to.”

# Philip Preached about Jesus 45-10

Philip explained to the Ethiopian man that **Isaiah** was writing about **Jesus**. Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the **good news** about Jesus.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# Here Is Water 45-11

As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to **some water**. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! **May I be baptized**?” And he told the driver to stop the **chariot**.

## Translation Notes:

* **some water** - Use a term that means a larger body of water such as a pond, lake, or stream.
* **May I be baptized?** - This could also be translated as, “Is there any reason that I cannot be baptized?”

# Philip Baptized the Ethiopian 45-12

So they went down into the water, and Philip **baptized** the Ethiopian. After they came up out of the water, the **Holy Spirit** suddenly **carried Philip away** to another place where he continued telling people about **Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **carried Philip away** - That is, “took Philip away” or, “snatched Philip away.”

# The Ethiopian Went Home 45-13

The Ethiopian continued traveling toward his home, happy that he knew **Jesus**.

*A Bible story from: Acts 6:8-8:5; 8:26-40*

## Translation Notes:

* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Saul Arrested the Believers 46-01

**Saul** was the young man who **guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen**. He did not **believe** in **Jesus**, and so he **persecuted** the **believers**. He went **from house to house** in **Jerusalem** to arrest both men and women and to put them in prison. The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of **Damascus** to arrest Christians there and to bring them back to Jerusalem.

## Translation Notes:

* **guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen** - See - **from house to house** - That is, “into many houses.” - **Damascus** - Damascus is now the capital of the country of Syria. During Saul’s time, it was a city belonging to the Roman Empire. Most of the people there were not Jewish, but there were some Jews and also some Christians living there.

# Saul Saw Jesus 46-02

While **Saul** was **on his way** to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, **Master**?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!”

## Translation Notes:

* **on his way** - That is, “on his journey.”

# Saul Became Blind 46-03

When **Saul** got up, he could not see. His friends had to lead him into Damascus. Saul did not eat or drink anything for three days.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# God Sent Ananias to Saul 46-04

There was a **disciple** in Damascus named Ananias. **God** said to him, “Go to the house where **Saul** is staying. Place your hands on him so that he can see again.” **But Ananias said**, “**Master**, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.” **God answered him**, “Go! I have chosen him **to declare my name** to the Jews and to people from other people groups. He will **suffer** many things **for my name**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **But Ananias said** – If it is not clear why the word “But” is used here, this could be translated as, “But Ananias was afraid, so he said.”
* **God answered him** – This could be translated as, “To reassure Ananias, God said” to make clear why God said this.
* **to declare my name** - That is, “to teach about me” or, “to make me known.”
* **for my name** - That is, “for me” or, “because of me” or, “because he serves me” or, “because he teaches others about me.”

# Ananias Baptized Saul 46-05

So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “**Jesus**, who appeared to you on your way **here**, sent me to you so that you can **regain your sight** and be filled with the **Holy Spirit**.” Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him. Then Saul ate some food and **his strength returned**.

## Translation Notes:

* **here** - That is, “to Damascus.” - **regain your sight** - This could also be translated as, “be able to see again.”
* **his strength returned** - This could also be translated as, “he became strong again” or, “he felt better.”

# Saul Preached about Jesus 46-06

**Right away**, **Saul** began **preaching** to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, “**Jesus** is the **Son of God**!” The Jews were amazed that the man who had tried to destroy the **believers** now also believed in Jesus! Saul **reasoned with the Jews**, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Right away** - This can also be translated as, “Immediately” or, “Then.”
* **reasoned with the Jews** - This could also be translated as, “gave the Jews good reasons for believing in Jesus” or, “spoke persuasively with the Jews.”

# Saul Escaped Damascus 46-07

After many days, the **Jews** made a plan to kill **Saul**. They sent people to watch for him at **the city gates** in order to kill him. But Saul heard about the plan, and his friends helped him escape. One night they **lowered him over the city wall in a basket**. After Saul escaped from Damascus, he continued to **preach** about **Jesus**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the city gates** - The gates were the only normal way into or out of the walled cities.
* **lowered him over the city wall in a basket** - Another way to say this would be, “helped him get into a large basket and lowered the basket with him in it over the city wall.”

# Saul Went to Jerusalem 46-08

**Saul went to Jerusalem** to meet with the **disciples**, but they were afraid of him. Then a **believer** named **Barnabas** took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had **preached** boldly in Damascus. After that, the disciples **accepted Saul**.

## Translation Notes:

* **accepted Saul** - That is, “believed that Saul also was a believer in Jesus.”

# The Christians in Antioch 46-09

Some believers who fled from the **persecution** in **Jerusalem** went far away to the **city of Antioch** and preached about **Jesus**. Most of the people in Antioch were not **Jews**, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. **Barnabas** and **Saul** went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to **strengthen the church**. It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **city of Antioch** - This was an ancient city located in what is now the southernmost tip of the modern country of Turkey, near its border with Syria and close to the Mediterranean Sea. It was about 450 miles northwest of Jerusalem.
* **strengthen the church** - This could also be translated as, “help the church to grow strong spiritually” or, “help the believers in Jesus to grow strong in their faith” or, “help the people to believe more firmly in Jesus.”

# Barnabas and Saul 46-10

**One day**, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and **praying**, the **Holy Spirit** said to them, “**Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do**.” So **the church** in Antioch **prayed** for **Barnabas** and **Saul** and **placed their hands on them**. Then they **sent them out** to **preach** the **good news** about **Jesus** in many other places. Barnabas and Saul taught people from different people groups, and many people **believed** in Jesus.

*A Bible story from: Acts 8:3; 9:1-31; 11:19-26; 13:1-3*

## Translation Notes:

* **One day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **Set apart for me …** - This sentence could also be translated as, “Appoint Paul and Barnabas to do the special work I have chosen them to do.”
* **the church** – This could also be translated as, “the believers” or, “the Christians.”
* **placed their hands on them** - This could also be translated as, “blessed them with the power and authority of the Holy Spirit by putting their hands on them” or, “put their hands on them as a sign of their unity in the Spirit.” Some languages may have to say where they placed their hands. If so, you could say they placed their hands on their head, shoulder or back.
* **sent them out** - That is, “sent them away” or, “sent them on their journey.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# Paul and Silas in Philippi 47-01

As Saul traveled throughout the **Roman Empire**, **he began to use his Roman name, ”Paul.”** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of **Philippi** to **proclaim** the **good news** about **Jesus**. They went to a place by the river outside the city where people gathered to pray. There they met a woman named Lydia who was a **merchant**. She **loved** and **worshiped** **God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **proclaim** - That is, “teach” or, “preach.” - **merchant**
* This could also be translated as, “seller” or, “business owner.”

# Lydia Was Baptized 47-02

**God** **opened Lydia’s heart to understand** the message about **Jesus**, and **she and her family were baptized**. She invited **Paul** and **Silas** to stay at her house, **so they stayed with her and her family**.

## Translation Notes:

* **opened Lydia’s heart** - That is, “enabled Lydia.” - **to understand** - That is, “to understand and believe.” - **she and her family were baptized** - This can also be translated as, “they baptized Lydia and her family.”
* **so they stayed with her and her family** - This was the normal custom of the day for people to provide hospitality to visitors in their homes. There were no immoral motives in this arrangement.

# The Slave Girl 47-03

**Paul** and **Silas** often met with people at the place of **prayer**. Every day as they walked there, a **slave girl** **possessed by a demon** followed them. By means of this **demon** she predicted the future for people, so she made a lot of money for **her masters** **as a fortuneteller**.

## Translation Notes:

* **her masters** - In this case, this could also be translated as, “her owners.”
* **as a fortuneteller** - That is, “as someone who told people what would happen to them in the future.”

# The Testimony of the Demon 47-04

The **slave girl** kept yelling as they walked, “These men are **servants** of the **Most High God**. They are telling you **the way to be saved**!” She did this so often that **Paul** became annoyed.

## Translation Notes:

* **the way to be saved** - That is, “how you can be saved” or, “how God saves people” or, “God’s plan for saving people.”

# Paul Healed the Slave Girl 47-05

Finally **one day** when the **slave girl** started yelling, **Paul** **turned to her** and said to the **demon** that was in her, “**In the name of Jesus**, **come out of her**.” Right away the demon left her.

## Translation Notes:

* **one day** - This phrase introduces an event that happened in the past, but does not state the specific time. Many languages have a similar way to begin telling a true story.
* **turned to her** – That is, “turned around and looked at her.”
* **In the name of Jesus** - That is, “by the authority of Jesus.” Because of Jesus’ authority, Paul could command the demon to leave.
* **come out of her** - That is, “leave her” or, “go away from her.”

# The People Were Angry 47-06

The men who owned the **slave girl** became very angry! They realized that **without the demon**, the slave girl could not tell people **the future**. **This meant that** people would no longer pay her owners money so that she would tell them what would happen to them.

## Translation Notes:

* **without the demon** - That is, “without the power from the demon” or, “now that she did not have the demon.”
* **the future** - That is, “what would happen to them in the future.” - **This meant that** - This could also be translated as, “Because of this” or, “Therefore.”

# Paul and Silas Were Arrested 47-07

So the owners of the **slave girl** took **Paul** and **Silas** to the **Roman authorities**, who beat them and **threw them** into jail.

## Translation Notes:

* **threw them** - That is, “put them.”

# Paul and Silas in Prison 47-08

They put **Paul** and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet **in the middle of the night**, they were **singing songs of praise to God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **in the middle of the night** – This could be translated as, “very late at night” or, “very early in the morning.” This was when it was completely dark outside, when people would normally be asleep.
* **singing songs of praise to God** - This can also be translating as, “praising God by singing” or, “singing songs to praise God” or, “singing songs that gave praise to God.”

# The Earthquake 47-09

Suddenly, there was a violent earthquake! All the prison doors **flew open**, and the chains of all the prisoners **fell off**.

## Translation Notes:

* **flew open** - That is, “became unlocked and suddenly opened wide.” - **fell off** - That is, “suddenly came off” or, “suddenly came apart so that the prisoners were released.”

# The Jailer 47-10

**The jailer** woke up, and when he saw that the prison doors were open, he was terrified! He thought all the prisoners had escaped, so he planned to kill himself. (He knew the **Roman authorities** would kill him if he allowed the prisoners to escape.) But **Paul** saw him and yelled, “Stop! Do not hurt yourself. **We** are all here.”

## Translation Notes:

* **The jailer** - That is, “the official in charge of the jail.” - **We** - Some languages have a special form of the word “we” which does not include the person being talked to. Here the “we” does not include the jailer, only Paul and the rest of the prisoners.

# What Must I Do? 47-11

The jailer trembled as he came to **Paul** and **Silas** and asked, “What must I do **to be saved**?” **Paul** answered, “**Believe in Jesus, the Master**, and **you and your family will be saved**.” Then the jailer took Paul and Silas into his home and washed their wounds. Paul **preached** the **good news** about Jesus to everyone in his house.

## Translation Notes:

* **to be saved** - This could also be translated as, “in order to be saved from my sins” or “so that God will save me from my sins.” The question refers to salvation from being punished by the God who caused the earthquake.
* **Believe in Jesus, the Master** - This is addressed to both the jailer and his family, who all then believed and were baptized. Some languages may use a form to indicate that Paul is speaking to the group.
* **you and your family will be saved** - This can also be translated as, “God will save you and your family from eternal punishment for your sins.” Make sure it is clear that the salvation referred to here is spiritual, not physical.

# The Jailer Was Baptized 47-12

The jailer and his whole family **believed** in **Jesus** and were **baptized**. Then the jailer gave **Paul** and **Silas** a meal and they **rejoiced** together.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# The Good News Spreads 47-13

The next day **the leaders of the city** released **Paul** and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**. Paul and Silas visited **Lydia** and some other friends and then left the city. **The good news about Jesus kept spreading**, and **the Church kept growing**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the leaders of the city** - This refers to, “the officials of the city” or, “the authorities of the city.”
* **The good news about Jesus kept spreading** - That is, “People in more and more places were hearing the good news about Jesus.”
* **the Church kept growing** - That is, “more and more people were becoming part of the Church” or, “more and more people were believing in Jesus.”

# Letters to the Churches 47-14

**Paul** and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the **good news** about **Jesus**. They also wrote **many letters** to encourage and teach the **believers** in the **churches**. Some of these letters became books of the Bible.

*A Bible story from: Acts 16:11-40*

## Translation Notes:

* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Perfect Creation 48-01

When **God created the world**, everything was **perfect**. **There was no sin**. **Adam** and **Eve** **loved** each other, and they loved God. **There was no sickness or death**. This was the way God wanted the world to be.

## Translation Notes:

* **God created the world** - That is, “God made the world out of nothing.”
* **perfect** - That is, “exactly as it should be” to accomplish all that God intended for it.
* **There was no sin** - For some languages it is not possible to express “sin” as a thing, rather it is an action. In those cases this could be translated as, “No one ever sinned” or, “People did not sin” or, “Nothing evil had happened.”
* **There was no sickness or death** - That is, “No one got sick and no one died” or, “They did not get sick or die.”

# Adam and Eve Sinned 48-02

**Satan** spoke through the snake in **the garden** in order to **deceive Eve**. Then she and **Adam** **sinned** against **God**. Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.

## Translation Notes:

* **the garden** - This refers to the garden created by God where he placed the first man and woman.
* **deceive Eve** - That is, “lie to Eve.” Satan lied by leading Eve to doubt what God had said. By doing this, he tricked her into disobeying God.

# Enemies of God 48-03

Because **Adam** and **Eve** **sinned**, something **even more terrible** happened. They became enemies of **God**. As a result, every person since then has been born with a sinful nature and is also an enemy of God. The relationship between God and people was broken by sin. But God had a plan to restore that relationship.

## Translation Notes:

* **even more terrible** - That is, “much worse” or, “worse yet.”

# Jesus Will Crush Satan 48-04

**God** **promised** that one of **Eve’s** **descendants** would **crush Satan’s head**, and Satan would **wound his heel**. This meant that Satan would kill the **Messiah**, but God would **raise him to life again**, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever. Many years later, God revealed that **Jesus** is the Messiah.

## Translation Notes:

* **crush Satan’s head** - This could also be translated as, “step on Satan’s head and smash it down flat” or, “shatter Satan’s head by stepping on it.” This is an image of a person stepping on the head of a snake. The head is completely crushed, and the snake is dead and therefore harmless.
* **wound his heel** - This is an image of a snake on the ground biting a person’s foot. In this case, Satan would cause the Messiah to suffer, but would not destroy him.
* **raise him to life again** - That is, “make him alive again.”

# A Way of Salvation 48-05

When **God** destroyed the whole earth by the flood, he provided the boat to **save** the people who **believed** in him. In the same way, everyone deserves to be **destroyed because of their sins**, but God provided **Jesus** to save everyone who believes in him.

## Translation Notes:

* **destroyed because of their sins** - This could also be translated as, “everyone should be punished eternally by God because they have sinned.”

# The Great High Priest 48-06

For hundreds of years, **priests** continually offered **sacrifices** to **God** for people to show the punishment that they deserved for their **sins**. But those sacrifices could not take away their sin. **Jesus** is the **Great High Priest**. Unlike other priests, **he offered himself** as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect high priest because he **took the punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

## Translation Notes:

* **he offered himself** - This could also be translated as, “Jesus allowed himself to be killed.”
* **took the punishment** - That is, “received the punishment in his own body.”

# God’s People 48-07

**God** told **Abraham**, “**All the people groups of the earth** will be **blessed** through you.” **Jesus** was a **descendant**of Abraham. All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who **believes** in Jesus is **saved** from sin, and becomes **a spiritual descendant of Abraham**.

## Translation Notes:

* **all the people groups of the earth** – This could also be translated as, “people from all different parts of the world.”
* **a spiritual descendant of Abraham** - That is, “spiritually related to Abraham, and one of God’s people.”

# The Lamb of God 48-08

When **God** told **Abraham** to offer his **son**, **Isaac**, as a **sacrifice**, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice **instead of his son, Isaac**. We all **deserve to die** for our **sins**! But God provided **Jesus**, the **Lamb of God**, as a sacrifice **to die in our place**.

## Translation Notes:

* **instead of his son, Isaac** - This can also be translated as, “in the place of his son, Isaac” or, “in his son Isaac’s place” or, “so that he would not have to offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice.”
* **deserve to die** - That is, “should die.” - **to die in our place** - This can also be translated as, “to die in the place of each of us” or, “so that he would not have to kill us.”

# The Passover 48-09

When **God** **sent the last plague on Egypt**, he told each **Israelite** family to kill **a perfect lamb** and spread **its blood** on the tops and sides of their **door frames**. When God saw the blood, he **passed over** their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.

## Translation Notes:

* **sent the last plague on Egypt** – That is, “caused the final disaster to come on Egypt.” This was the tenth plague when God caused the firstborn sons of the Egyptians to die.
* **a perfect lamb** - That is, “a lamb without any defect.” - **its blood** - That is, “the lamb’s blood.” - **door frames** – If door frames are not known, this could be translated as, “doors.”
* **passed over** - This could also be translated as, “passed by” or, “went by.” You may want to connect how this is translated with how “Passover” is translated.

# The Passover Lamb 48-10

**Jesus** is **our Passover Lamb**. He was perfect and **sinless** and was killed at the time of the Passover celebration. When anyone **believes** in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus pays for that person’s **sin**, and **God’s punishment passes over that person**.

## Translation Notes:

* **our Passover Lamb** - That is, “the Passover Lamb that was killed for us” or, “the lamb that was killed so that God would pass over us” or, “the lamb that was killed so that God would spare us.”
* **sinless** - This can also be translated as, “had never sinned.”
* **God’s punishment passes over that person** - This statement means, “God does not punish that person.” Translate it using a phrase that shows its relationship to the words for “Passover” and the “Passover Lamb.” If the word “spare” is used in the name of the Passover, this could also be translated as, “God spares that person from punishment.”

# God’s New Covenant 48-11

**God** made a **covenant** with **the Israelites, who were his chosen people**. But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by **believing** in Jesus.

## Translation Notes:

* **the Israelites, who were his chosen people** - That is, “the Israelites, the people he had chosen” or, “his chosen people, the Israelites.”

# The Word of God 48-12

**Moses** was **a great prophet** who proclaimed the **word of God**. But **Jesus** is **the greatest prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Translation Notes:

* **a great prophet** - That is, “a very important prophet.” - **the greatest prophet** - That is, “the most important prophet.” - **He is the Word of God** - That is, “He is called the Word of God” because he reveals God’s character. The other prophets preached the message God gave them, but Jesus revealed God in his preaching and his actions.

# A Descendent of David 48-13

**God** **promised** **King David** that the **Messiah** would be one of his **descendants**. **Jesus**, the Messiah, was that special descendant of David.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# King of the Universe 48-14

**David** was the **king** of **Israel**, but **Jesus** is **the king of the entire universe**! He will come again and rule his **kingdom** with **justice** and **peace**, forever.

*A Bible story from: Genesis 1-3, 6, 14, 22; Exodus 12, 20; 2 Samuel 7; Hebrew 3:1-6, 4:14-5:10, 7:1-8:13, 9:11-10:18; Revelation 21*

## Translation Notes:

* **the king of the entire universe** - That is, “the king over everyone and everything everywhere.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Virgin Birth 49-01

An angel told a **virgin** named **Mary** that she would give birth to **God’s Son**. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him **Jesus**. Therefore, Jesus is both God and human.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# The Miracles 49-02

**Jesus** did many **miracles** that prove he is **God**. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, **drove out demons**, **raised the dead to life**, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Translation Notes:

* **drove out demons** - That is, “made demons come out of people.”
* **raised the dead to life** - This could also be translated as, “caused dead people to become alive again.”

# Jesus the Teacher 49-03

**Jesus** was also **a great teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the **Son of God**. He taught that you need to **love** other people **the same way** you love yourself.

## Translation Notes:

* **a great teacher** - That is, “a very important teacher” or, “an excellent teacher.”
* **the same way** - That is, “as much as” or, “the same amount that” or, “to the same degree that.”

# Love God Above All 49-04

He also taught that you need to **love** **God** more than you love anything else, including **your wealth**.

## Translation Notes:

* **your wealth** - This could also be translated as, “your money” or, “your possessions.”

# The Value of Salvation 49-05

**Jesus** said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world. The most important thing that you should seek is **to be saved from your sin** so that you can enter into God’s kingdom.

## Translation Notes:

* **to be saved from your sin** - That is, “to be saved from being punished for your sin” or, “that God would save you from your sin” or, “to receive salvation from your sin.”

# Not All Will Be Saved 49-06

**Jesus** taught that some people will **receive** him and be **saved**, but **others will not**. He said that some people are like good soil. They receive the **good news** of Jesus and are saved. Other people are like the hard soil of a path, where the **seed of God’s word** does not enter and does not produce any harvest. Those people reject the message about Jesus and will not enter into **his kingdom**.

## Translation Notes:

* **others will not** - That is, “other people will not receive him and therefore will not be saved.”
* **seed of God’s word** - This can be translated as, “seed, which can be compared to God’s word.” This phrase makes a comparison between seed and God’s word.

# God Loves Sinners 49-07

**Jesus** taught that **God** **loves** **sinners** very much. He wants to **forgive** you and to make you his child.

## Translation Notes:

* \*\*

# God Hates Sin 49-08

**Jesus** also told us that **God** hates **sin**. When **Adam** and **Eve** **sinned**, it affected all of their **descendants**. As a result, every person in the world sins and **is separated from God**. Therefore, everyone has become an enemy of God.

## Translation Notes:

* **is separated from God** - This can also be translated as, “cannot live with God” or, “cannot be near God” or, “cannot have a relationship with God.”

# God Gave His Son 49-09

But **God** **loved** everyone in the world so much that he **gave his only Son** so that **whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever**.

## Translation Notes:

* **gave his only Son** - This could also be translated as, “offered his only Son to the world as a sacrifice for sins” or, “gave us his only Son to be a sacrifice for our sins.”
* **whoever believes** - This could also be translated as, “anyone who believes.”
* **whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever** - This could also be translated as, “When anyone believes in Jesus, God will not punish that person for his sins, but will allow him to live with God forever.”

# Jesus Died in Our Place 49-10

**Because of your sin**, you are **guilty** and deserve to **die**. **God should be angry** with you, but he **poured out his anger on** **Jesus** instead of on you. When Jesus died on the **cross**, he **received your punishment**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Because of your sin** – This can also be translated as, “Because you have sinned.” To make it clear that this is talking about all people, for some languages it may be more clear to translate this as, “Because all people have sinned, they are guilty. They deserve death.”
* **God should be angry** – This can also be translated as, “It would be right for God to be angry.”
* **poured out his anger on** - That is, “directed his anger at” or, “placed all of his anger upon” or, “was angry only with.”
* **received your punishment** - This could also be translated as, “was punished instead of you” or, “was punished for your sin.” To make it clear that this applies to everyone, it could also be translated as, ”was punished for everyone’s sin.”

# The Sinless Sacrifice 49-11

**Jesus** never **sinned**, but he chose to be **punished** and to **die** as the perfect **sacrifice** to **take away** your sins and the sins of every person in the world. Because Jesus sacrificed himself, **God** can **forgive** any sin, even terrible sins.

## Translation Notes:

* **take away** - That is, “remove the penalty of” or, “remove the punishment for.” The sacrifice of Jesus causes God to look at our sin as if it never existed.

# Jesus Died and Rose Again 49-12

**Good works cannot save you**. There is nothing you can do to have a relationship with **God**. Only **Jesus** can **wash away your sins**. You must **believe** that Jesus is the **Son of God**, that he **died** on the **cross** **instead of you**, and that God **raised him to life again**.

## Translation Notes:

* **Good works cannot save you** - That is, “Doing good things cannot save you from your sins” or, “You cannot do anything good enough to save yourself from the penalty for your sins.”
* **wash away your sins** - That is, “completely remove your sins” or, “take away your sins and make you clean.” This is talking about God purifying people in their spirit by completely removing their sins. It does not mean physical washing.
* **instead of you** – That is, “ in your place.” - **raised him to life again** - This could also be translated as, “made him alive again.”

# God Loves You 49-13

**God** will **save** everyone who **believes** in **Jesus** and **receives** him as their **Master**. But he will not save anyone who does not believe in him. It does not matter if you are rich or poor, man or woman, old or young, or where you live. God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so **he can have a close relationship with you**.

## Translation Notes:

* **he can have a close relationship with you** - This can also be translated as, “so that you can be his child” or, “so that you can be his friend” or, “so you can belong to him.”

# Believe in Jesus 49-14

**Jesus** invites you to **believe in him** and to **be baptized**. Do you **believe that** Jesus is the **Messiah**, the only **Son of God**? Do you believe that you are a **sinner** and that you deserve for **God** to **punish** you? Do you believe that Jesus **died** on the **cross** to **take away** your sins?

## Translation Notes:

* **believe in him** - This can also be translated as, “trust in him” or, “trust in him to save you” or, “entrust your whole life to him.”
* **be baptized** - This could also be translated as, “have someone baptize you” or, “let them baptize you.”
* **believe that** - This can also be translated as, “acknowledge that” or, “agree that.”
* **take away** - See note on

# God’s Kingdom of Light 49-15

If you **believe** in **Jesus** and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian**! **God** has taken you out of **Satan’s kingdom of darkness** and put you into **God’s kingdom of light**. God has taken away your old, sinful ways of doing things and has given you new, righteous ways of doing things.

## Translation Notes:

* **Satan’s kingdom of darkness** - “Darkness” is used here to refer to sin and everything that is evil. This could be translated as, “Satan’s evil rule over people, which is like darkness.”
* **God’s kingdom of light** - “Light” here refers to God’s holiness and goodness. This could be translated as, “God’s righteous rule over people, which is like light.” The Bible often compares evil to darkness, and goodness to light.

# Sins Are Forgiven 49-16

If you are a **Christian**, **God** has **forgiven** your **sins** because of what **Jesus** did. Now, God **considers you to be** a close friend instead of an enemy.

## Translation Notes:

* **considers you to be** - That is, “thinks of you as” or, “regards you as” or, “calls you.”

# Follow Jesus’ Teachings 49-17

If you are a friend of **God** and a **servant** of **Jesus** the **Master**, you will want to **obey** what Jesus teaches you. Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still **be tempted to sin**. But God **is faithful** and says that if you **confess your sins**, he will **forgive** you. **He will give you strength to fight against sin**.

## Translation Notes:

* **be tempted to sin** - That is, ““be tempted to sin even though you know sin is wrong.”
* **is faithful** - In this context this means that God, “keeps his promises.”
* **confess your sins** - This could be translated as, “admit to God what you have done wrong.”
* **He will give you strength to fight against sin** - That is, “He will give you spiritual strength to refuse to sin.”

# Grow as a Christian 49-18

**God** tells you to **pray**, to study **his word**, to **worship** him with other **Christians**, and to tell others what he has done for you. All of these things help you **to have a deeper relationship with him**.

*A Bible story from: Romans 3:21-26, 5:1-11; John 3:16; Mark 16:16; Colossians 1:13-14; 2 Corinthians 5:17-21; 1 John 1:5-10*

## Translation Notes:

* **to have a deeper relationship with him** - This could also be translated as, “to love him more” or, “to know him more” or, “to become more faithful to him.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.

# The Church Is Growing 50-01

For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news** about **Jesus** the **Messiah**. **The Church has been growing**. Jesus **promised** he would return **at the end of the world**. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

## Translation Notes:

* **The Church has been growing** - This could also be translated as, “The number of people in the Church around the world has been increasing” or, “The number of believers in Jesus has been increasing.”
* **at the end of the world** - This phrase means, “right before the present world comes to an end” or, “in the final days of this world.”

# The Good News 50-02

As we wait for **Jesus** to return, **God** wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him. He also wants us to tell others about his **kingdom**. When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My **disciples** will **preach** the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then **the end will come**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **the end will come** - This could be translated as, “the end of this world will come” or, “the end of this world will happen” or, “this present world will end.”

# The Fields Are Ripe 50-03

Many **people groups** still have not heard about **Jesus**. Before he returned to **heaven**, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it. He said, “Go and **make disciples** of all people groups!” and, “**The fields are ripe for harvest**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **make disciples** - This has the meaning, “help people to become my disciples.”
* **The fields are ripe for harvest** - This could also be translated as, “They are ready to be brought to God like fields that are ripe for harvest” or, “They are ready to be gathered and brought to God like fields whose crops are ripe and ready to be gathered.”
* **The fields** - In this expression, “The fields” represents the people in the world.
* **ripe** - “Ripe” here represents being ready to believe in Jesus.
* **harvest** - “Harvest” here represents the work of bringing people to God by teaching them about Jesus.

# Remain Faithful 50-04

**Jesus** also said, “A **servant** is **not greater than** his **master**. Just as the authorities of this world have hated me, they will torture and kill you **because of me**. Although **in this world** you will **suffer**, be encouraged because I have defeated **Satan**, the one who rules this world. If you **remain faithful to me** **to the end**, then **God will save you**!”

## Translation Notes:

* **not greater than** - That is, “not more important than” or, in this case, “not treated better than.”
* **because of me** - That is, “because you obey me” or, “because you teach people about me” or, “because you belong to me.”
* **in this world** - This could also be translated as, “in this lifetime.”
* **remain faithful to me** - That is, “Keep obeying me.” - **to the end** - That is, “to the end of your life.” - **will save you**
* This refers to spiritual salvation rather than physical deliverance from harm. It has already been stated that many believers will be killed or tortured.

# The Enemy 50-05

**Jesus** told his **disciples** a story to explain what will happen to people when the world ends. He said, “A man planted **good seed** in his field. While he was sleeping, his enemy came and planted **weed seeds** along with the **wheat**, and then he went away.”

## Translation Notes:

* **good seed** – This seed was wheat grain. If this type of seed is not known in your language area, it is best to use a general term for “seed.” If there is no general term, it may be necessary to choose a type of grain seed that is known and say, for example, “good seed like rice.”
* **weed seeds** - The weed seeds that were planted would grow up as tall grass but could not be eaten. They were useless.
* **wheat** – That is, “wheat seeds.” Wheat is a kind of grain that grows like a tall grass. It has seeds that people use for food.

# The Weeds 50-06

“When the plants sprouted, the **servants** of the man said, ‘**Master**, you planted **good** seed in that field. So why are there weeds in it?’ The master answered, ‘**An enemy must have planted them**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **An enemy must have planted them** - If possible, translate this in a way that indicates that the speaker did not see this happen.

# Wait for the Harvest 50-07

“The **servants** responded to their **master**, ‘Should we pull out the weeds?’ The master said, ‘No. If you do that, **you will pull out some of the wheat as well**. Wait **until the harvest** and then gather the weeds into piles to be burned, but bring **the wheat** into my **barn**.’”

## Translation Notes:

* + **you will pull out some of the wheat as well** - That is, “you will accidentally pull out some of the wheat also.” It would be too difficult to distinguish young wheat from the weeds, and to pull the weeds without uprooting the wheat.
* **until the harvest** - That is, “until the time when the wheat is ready to harvest” or, “until the wheat has grown enough to be harvested.”
* **the wheat** – That is, “the harvested wheat grains.” - **barn** - This refers to the building where the harvested wheat grain was saved and stored. It could also be called a “storehouse.”

# The Field Is the World 50-08

The **disciples** did not understand the meaning of the story, so they asked **Jesus** to explain it to them. Jesus said, “The man who planted the **good** seed represents the **Messiah**. The field represents the world. The good seed represents **the people of God’s kingdom**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **the people of God’s kingdom** - This can also be translated as, “the people who live under God’s authority” or, “the people who have submitted to God’s rule” or, “the people who will live with God in his Kingdom.”

# The Enemy Is the Devil 50-09

“The weeds represent the people **who belong to the evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents **the devil**. The harvest **represents the end of the world**, and **the harvesters** represent **God’s** **angels**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **who belong to the evil one** - That is, “who obey the evil one” or, “who are ruled by the evil one.”
* **the evil one** - This is another title for Satan. It could be translated as, “Satan,” but the title, “evil one” describes his character.
* **the devil** - This could also be translated as, “Satan.” - **represents the end of the world** - That is, “represents what will happen to people at the end of the world.”
* **the harvesters** – This could also be translated as, “the men who harvest the ripe grain” or, “the workers who gather in the ripe grain.”

# Evil People Will Be Judged 50-10

“When the world ends, the **angels** will gather together all the people **who belong to the devil** and throw them into **a raging fire**, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible **suffering**. Then **the righteous ones** will **shine like the sun** in the **kingdom** of **God their Father**.”

## Translation Notes:

* **who belong to the devil** - This could also be translated as, “who obey the devil” or, “who are ruled by the devil.” This refers to those who do not believe in Jesus but follow the evil ways of the devil.
* **a raging fire** - That is, “a very hot, burning fire” or, “a large, very hot fire.”
* **the righteous ones** - This refers to the people who belong to the Messiah. See
* **shine like the sun** - This could also be translated as, “be glorious like the sun” or, “show pure goodness as the sun shows bright light.”

# Dead Believers Will Rise Again 50-11

**Jesus** also said that he would return to earth just before the world ends. He will come back the same way that **he left**, that is, he will have a physical body and **will come on the clouds in the sky**. **When Jesus returns**, every **Christian** who has **died** will **rise** from the dead and **meet him in the sky**.

## Translation Notes:

* **he left** - This could also be translated as, “he left the earth” or, “he left to go back to heaven.”
* **will come on the clouds in the sky** - That is, “the clouds in the sky will surround him as he comes” or, “the clouds of the sky will carry him along.”
* **when Jesus returns** - That is, “when Jesus returns to the earth.” - **meet him in the sky** - That is, “join him in the sky.” Those who believe in Jesus will go up to be near Jesus while he is in the sky.

# We Will Meet Jesus in the Sky 50-12

Then the **Christians** who are **still alive** will rise up into the sky and join with the other Christians who **rose** from the **dead**. They will all be with **Jesus** there. After that, Jesus will live with his people in **perfect** peace and unity forever.

## Translation Notes:

* **still alive** - That is, “still alive when Jesus returns.” - **perfect** – That is, “complete” or, “total.”

# Our Crown 50-13

**Jesus** **promised** to give a **crown** to everyone who **believes** in him. We will **live** and reign with **God** in perfect **peace** forever.

## Translation Notes:

* **crown** - This crown represents our reward for believing in Jesus and serving him in this life.
* **perfect** – That is, “complete” or, “total.”

# The Fire of Hell 50-14

But **God** will **judge** everyone who does not **believe** in **Jesus**. He will throw them into **hell**, where they will **weep and grind their teeth in anguish** forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.

## Translation Notes:

* **weep and grind their teeth in anguish** - See note on

# God Will Judge Satan 50-15

When **Jesus** returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and **his kingdom**. He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to **obey** **God**.

## Translation Notes:

* **his kingdom** - This could also be translated as, “Satan’s evil rule over people” or, “all the evil things he does and the evil people he controls.”
* **rather than** - That is, “instead of.”

# The New Heaven and Earth 50-16

Because **Adam** and **Eve** **disobeyed** **God** and **brought sin into** this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it. But some day God will create **a new heaven** and **a new earth** that will be perfect.

## Translation Notes:

* **brought sin into** - This could be translated as, “caused sin to enter.”
* **a new heaven** - This could also be translated as, “a new sky” or, “a new universe”. It refers to a new set of stars and everything else in the sky.
* **a new earth** - This current earth on which we live will be replaced by a new and improved one.

# Jesus Will Reign Forever 50-17

**Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will **wipe away every tear** and **there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death**. Jesus will **rule his kingdom with peace and justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

*A Bible story from: Matthew 24:14; 28:18; John 15:20, 16:33; Revelation 2:10; Matthew 13:24-30, 36-42; 1 Thessalonians 4:13-5:11; James 1:12; Matthew 22:13; Revelation 20:10, 21:1-22:21*

## Translation Notes:

* **wipe away every tear** - This could also be translated as, “bring an end to all of our grief” or, “make trouble end” or, “tenderly take away any sadness people have.”
* **there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death** - This could also be translated as, “people will no longer suffer, be sad, cry, do evil things, feel pain, or die.”
* **rule his kingdom with peace and justice** – This could also be translated as, “rule over his people fairly, in a way that brings them peace.”
* *A Bible story from* - These references may be slightly different in some Bible translations.